As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠ 🕮 or ⚠⚠🕮 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠ or ⚠⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 102

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.
This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.
However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Vehicle Data Recordings

This vehicle records the following information as data when the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) is operated.

- Images of objects in front of the vehicle when the CMBS is activated
- Operational status of each function of the CMBS
- Accelerator / brake pedal operation
- Vehicle speed
- Information such as distance and relative speed of the target identified by the CMBS activated

Honda may obtain and use the recorded data for the purpose of technical diagnosis and research and development of Honda vehicles.
The CMBS does not record images or audio inside the vehicle. Special tools are required to review or remove data (including images) recorded by CMBS.
The CMBS image recording function can be turned off so that no images are recorded when CMBS is activated.

Disclosure of data
Honda will not disclose or provide the acquired data to third parties with data recorded by CMBS except in the following cases:

- When the owner of the vehicle consents
- When required by law, court order, or similar legally enforceable request
- When the data has been processed to de-identify/anonymise the vehicles/users, such as when aggregate data is provided to research institutions

Owner's Manual Application Terms and Conditions

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner's manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner's manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner's manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website (*https://www.privacynotice.honda.eu*) for further details.)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver owner's manual updates to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the owner's manual application and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner's manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the owner's manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

System Updates Terms and Conditions

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU), queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, Software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks for the download and install. The download and install functions can be configured automatic through the setting and can change the setting to manual in the later time.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain a log of the updates or alerts that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system update will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website (*https://www.privacynotice.honda.eu*) for further details.)

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

- to deliver the system update and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system update products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system update, to analyze trends and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of the system update.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 37
For Safe Driving P. 38 Seat Belts P. 42 Airbags P. 56

Instrument Panel P. 105
Indicators P. 106 Gauges and Displays P. 137

Controls P. 165
Clock P. 166 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 167
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 188
Interior Convenience Items P. 222

Features P. 237
Audio System P. 238 Colour Audio P. 241
General Information on the Audio System P. 379

Driving P. 391
Before Driving P. 392 Towing a Trailer P. 396 When Driving P. 397
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 518 Refueling P. 520

Maintenance P. 525
Before Performing Maintenance P. 526 Service Reminder System* P. 530
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 563
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 580 Cleaning P. 584

Handling the Unexpected P. 591
Tools P. 592 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 593
Overheating P. 614 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 616
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 632

Information P. 633
Specifications P. 634 Identification Numbers P. 637

Contents

Child Safety P. 76 Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 101 Safety Labels P. 102

Tailgate P. 179 Security System P. 181 Opening and Closing the Windows P. 184
Adjusting the Mirrors P. 208 Adjusting the Seats P. 211
Climate Control System P. 233

Display Audio P. 285 Audio Error Messages P. 377
Emergency Call (eCall) P. 386

Honda Sensing P. 432 Braking P. 496 Parking Your Vehicle P. 506
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 523

Maintenance Schedule* P. 535 Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 543 Replacing Light Bulbs P. 558
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 568 12-Volt Battery P. 573 Remote Transmitter Care P. 579
Accessories and Modifications P. 589

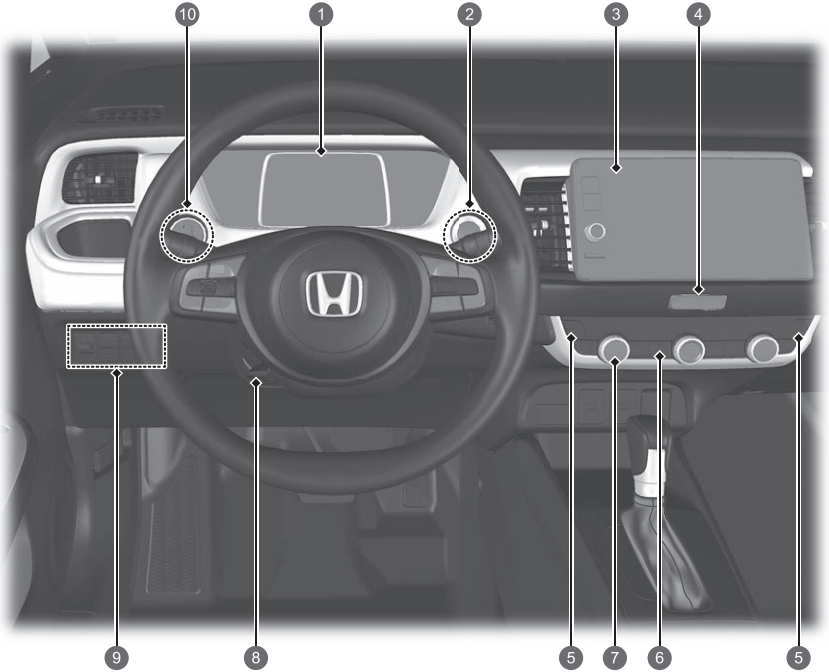
Power System Won't Start P. 607 Jump Starting P. 610 Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 613
Fuses P. 623 Emergency Towing P. 629 When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 630

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 638

Quick Reference Guide P. 6
Safe Driving P. 37
Instrument Panel P. 105
Controls P. 165
Features P. 237
Driving P. 391
Maintenance P. 525
Handling the Unexpected P. 591
Information P. 633
Index P. 671

Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



❶ **System Indicators** P. 106
Gauges P. 137
Driver Information Interface P. 140

❷ **POWER Button** P. 188

❸ **Audio System** P. 238
Navigation System* See the Navigation System Manual

❹ **Hazard Warning Button**

❺ **Seat Heater Buttons** P. 232

❻ **Rear Demister** P. 205
Heated Door Mirror Button P. 205

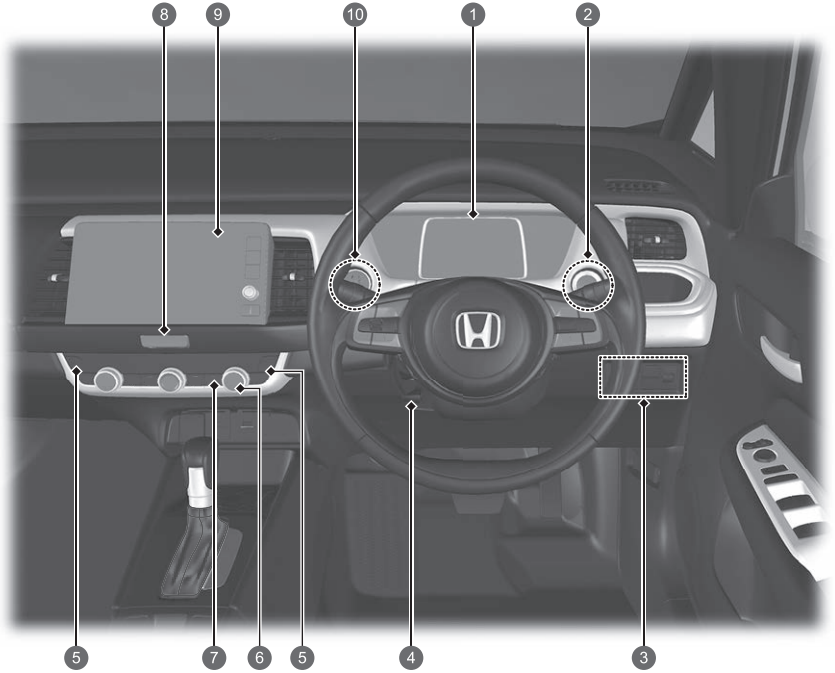
❼ **Climate Control System** P. 233

❽ **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 207

❾ **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 421
Safety Support Switch P. 430, 439, 482
Parking Sensor System Button* P. 509
Headlight Adjuster P. 198

❿ **Brightness Control** P. 206

Right-hand Drive Type



❶ **System Indicators** P. 106
Gauges P. 137
Driver Information Interface P. 140

❷ **POWER Button** P. 188

❸ **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 421
Safety Support Switch P. 430, 439, 482
Parking Sensor System Button* P. 509
Headlight Adjuster P. 198

❹ **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 207

❺ **Seat Heater Buttons*** P. 232

❻ **Climate Control System** P. 233

❼ **Rear Demister** P. 205
Heated Door Mirror Button P. 205

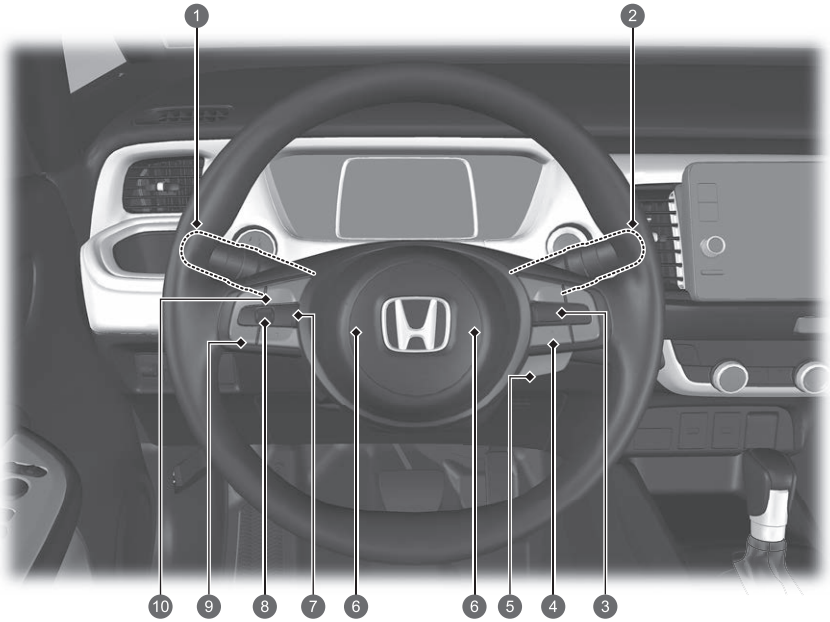
❽ **Hazard Warning Button**

❾ **Audio System** P. 238
Navigation System*
See the Navigation System Manual

❿ **Brightness Control** P. 206

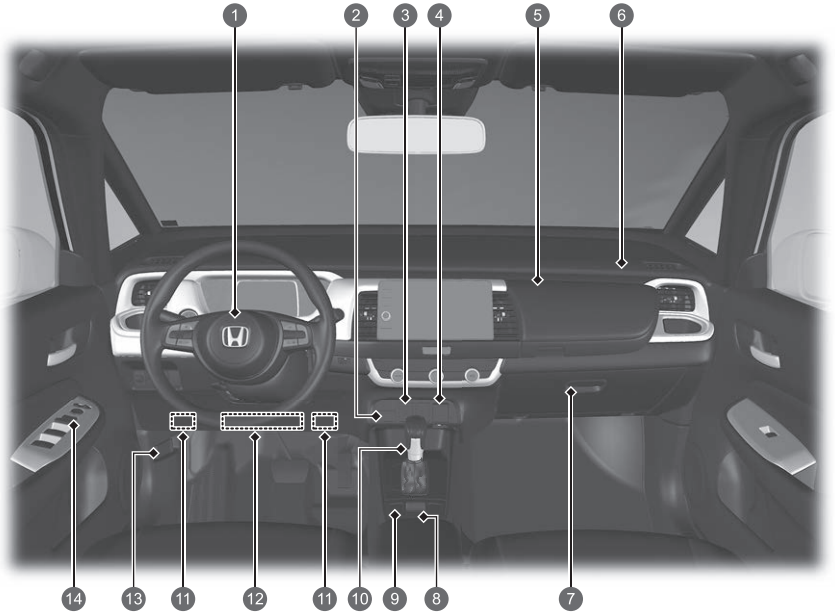
* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. **Headlights/Turn Signals** P. 191, 193
   Front Fog Lights* P. 195
   Rear Fog Light P. 195
2. **Wipers/Washers** P. 202
3. **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons** P. 447
4. **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button** P. 467
   Interval Button P. 462
5. **Heated Steering Wheel Button*** P. 231
6. **Horn (Press an area around .)**
7. **(Home) Button** P. 140, 289
8. **Left Selector Wheel** P. 140, 289
9. **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243, 289
10. **Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons** P. 269, 359
    Voice Control Buttons* P. 293

Left-hand Drive Type

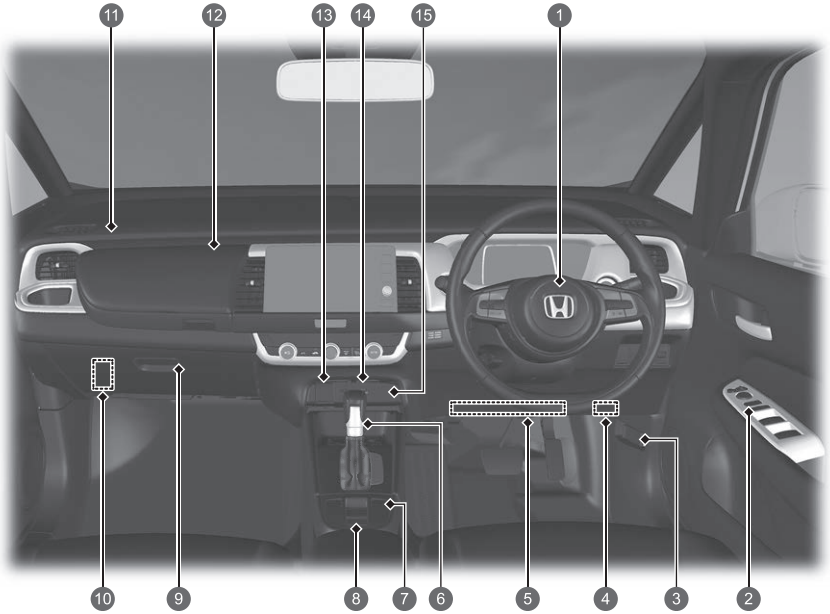


1. **Driver's Front Airbag** P. 58
2. **Passenger's Front Airbag OFF Indicator** P. 74
3. **USB Port(s)** P. 242, 288
4. **Accessory Power Socket** P. 231
5. **Upper Glove Box** P. 224
6. **Passenger's Front Airbag** P. 58
7. **Glove Box** P. 224
8. **Electric Parking Brake Switch** P. 496
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 500
9. **ECON Button** P. 405
10. **Shift Lever** P. 403
11. **Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box** P. 625
12. **Driver's Knee Airbag** P. 64
13. **Bonnet Release Handle** P. 544
14. **Door Mirror Controls** P. 209
    Master Door Lock Switch P. 177
    Power Window Switches P. 184

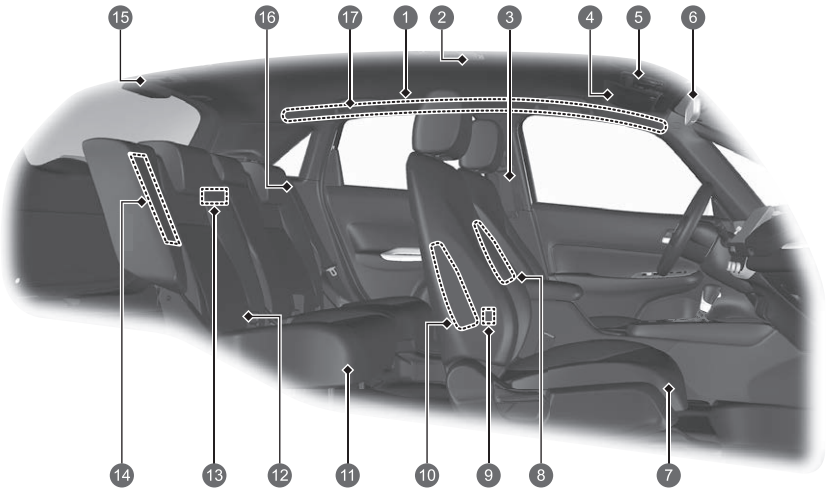
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



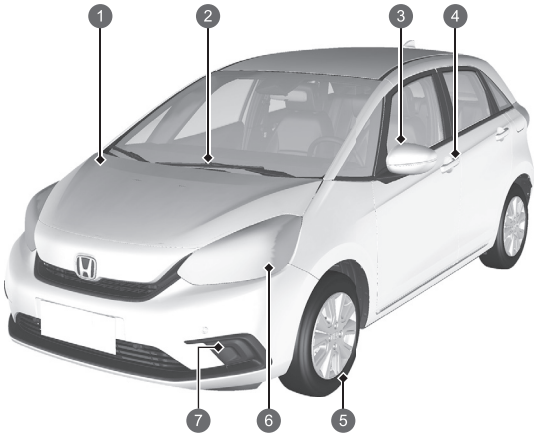
❶ Driver's Front Airbag P. 58
❷ Door Mirror Controls P. 209
Master Door Lock Switch P. 177
Power Window Switches P. 184
❸ Bonnet Release Handle P. 544
❹ Driver's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 625
❺ Driver's Knee Airbag P. 64
❻ Shift Lever P. 403
❼ ECON Button P. 405
❽ Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 496
Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 500
❾ Glove Box P. 224
❿ Passenger's Side Interior Fuse Box P. 627
⓫ Passenger's Front Airbag P. 58
⓬ Upper Glove Box P. 224
⓭ Accessory Power Socket P. 231
⓮ USB Port(s) P. 242, 288
⓯ Passenger's Front Airbag OFF Indicator P. 74



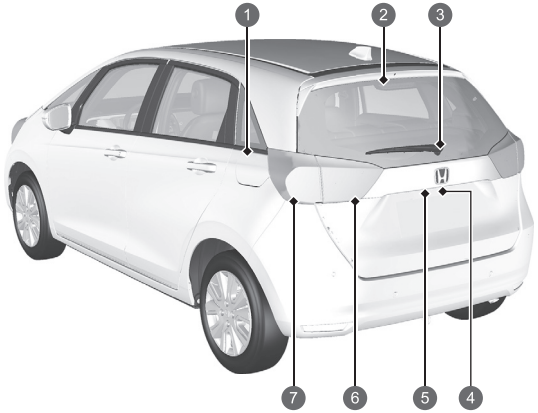
1. **Side Curtain Airbags** P. 71
2. **Ceiling Light** P. 222
3. **Seat Belts** P. 42
4. **Sun Visors**
   Vanity Mirrors
5. **Map Lights** P. 223
   SOS Button P. 388
6. **Rearview Mirror** P. 208
7. **Front Seat** P. 211
8. **Centre Airbag** P. 66
9. **USB Ports*** P. 288
10. **Front Side Airbags** P. 68
11. **Rear Seat** P. 214
12. **Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems** P. 90
13. **Luggage Area Light** P. 223
14. **Rear Side Airbags** P. 68
15. **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 51
16. **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)** P. 94
    Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System P. 96
17. **Grab Handle**
    Coat Hook P. 227

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 543
2. Windscreen Wipers P. 202, 563
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 209
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 193, 558
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 170
5. Tyres P. 568, 593
6. Headlights P. 191, 558
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 191, 197, 558
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 193, 558
7. Front Fog Lights* P. 195, 558



1. How to Refuel P. 521
2. High-Mount Brake Light P. 561
3. Rear Wiper P. 204, 566
4. Opening/Closing the Tailgate P. 179
   Tailgate Outer Handle P. 180
   Rear Licence Plate Light P. 191, 561
5. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 518
6. Taillights P. 191, 560
   Back-Up Lights P. 560
   Rear Fog Light P. 195, 561
7. Brake/Taillights P. 191, 559
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 193, 559

e:HEV

Your e:HEV vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery or internal generator. The High Voltage battery can be charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

- **Energy efficiency**
  As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine.
  In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

- **Battery types**
  There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

e:HEV MAIN COMPONENTS

Petrol Engine– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels under certain driving conditions, and turns the generator.

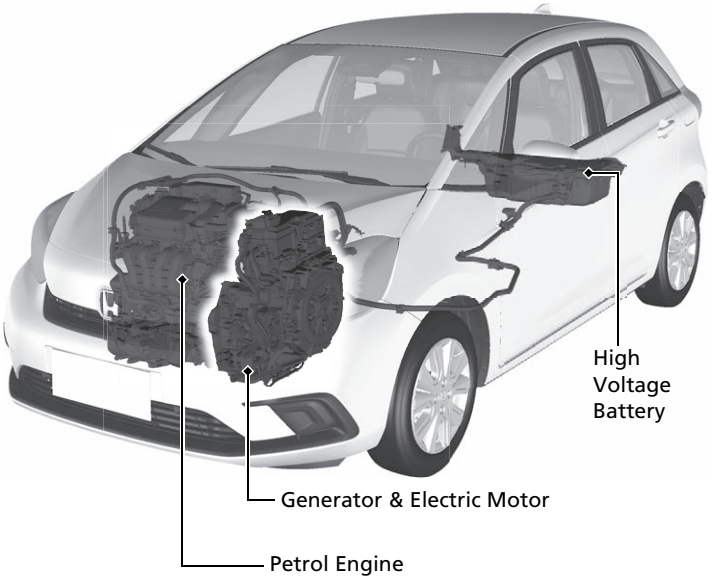
Generator– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

Electric Motor– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions, and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

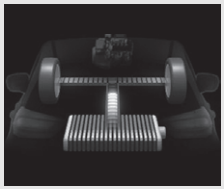
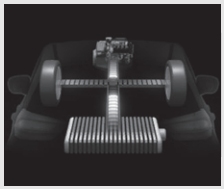
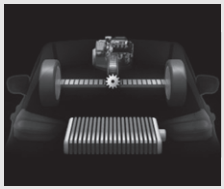
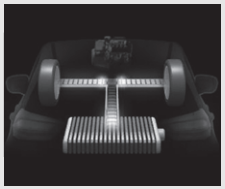
High Voltage Battery– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.
Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximise the range of your electric vehicle. P. 431

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Indicator– Displays battery state of charge.
When the indicator:

- Displays two or less segments, EV mode is no longer available.
- Displays ten segments, battery charge level is full.

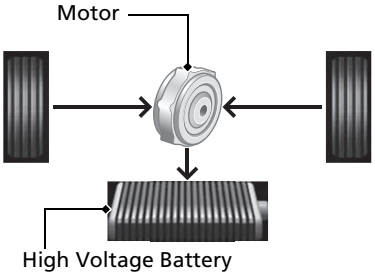




Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	Stopped or driven at low speeds: • Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels.	Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): • The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. • The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging.	Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: • The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. • The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.	The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. • The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

● **Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking**

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-powered vehicle. This function is enhanced when the shift lever is moved to B.

● **Auto Engine Stop/Start**

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

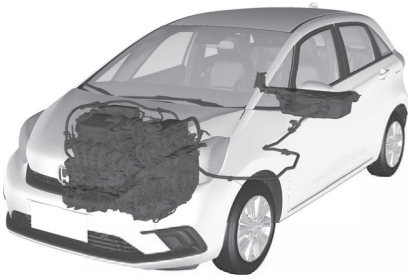
In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.

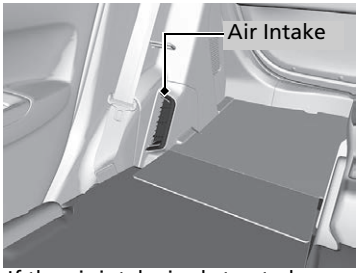
● **Sounds Unique to the e:HEV**

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop. Some of these sounds are unique to this vehicle's powertrain, fuel, and climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognise them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

Safety Precautions



Do not cover the air intake



If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.

Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system is performed by a Honda dealer.

If a crash occurs

● Be careful of electric shock hazard.

▶If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

● Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

▶The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

● Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

▶Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

● Anytime the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

● The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

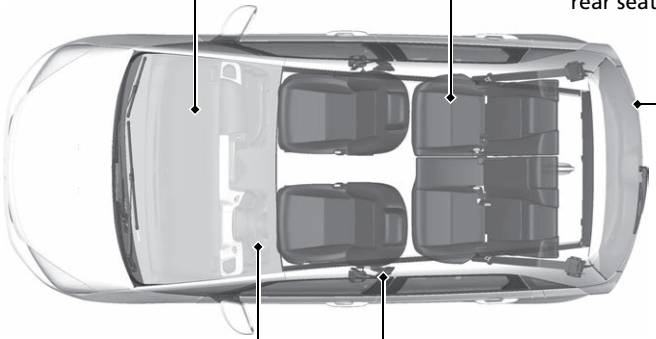
Safe Driving P. 37

Airbags P. 56

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Child Safety P. 76

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 101

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 42

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



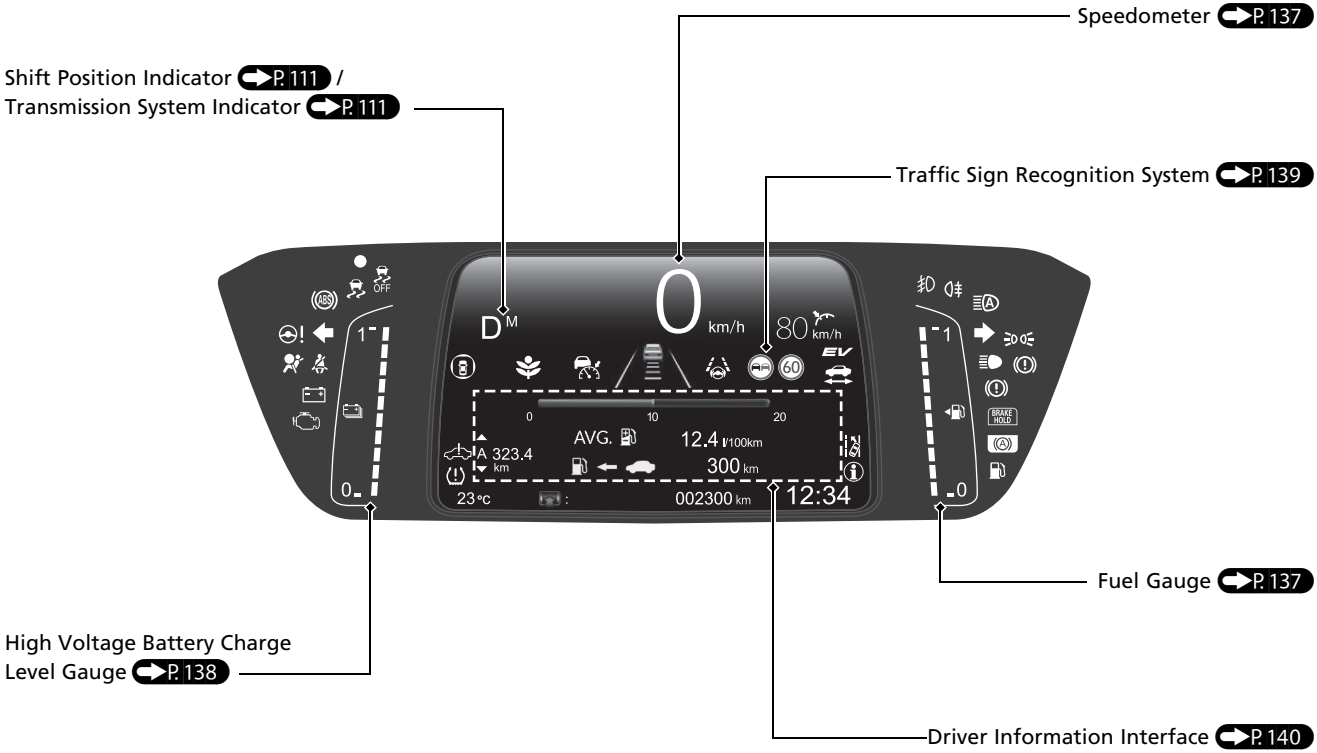
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Before Driving Checklist P. 41

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Instrument Panel P. 105

Indicators P. 106/Driver Information Interface P. 140/Gauges P. 137



Controls P. 165

Clock P. 166

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.
P. 304

Models with colour audio



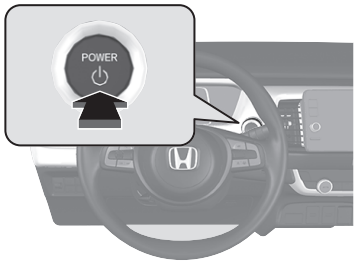
1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to change hour, then press.
3. Rotate to change minute, then press.
4. Select **SET**, then press.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate to select.
- Press to enter.

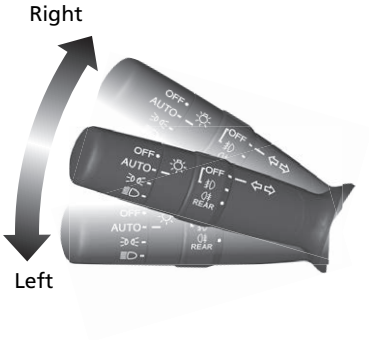
POWER Button P. 188

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



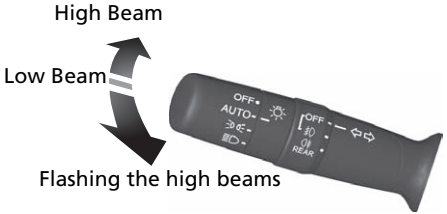
Turn Signals P. 193

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 191

Light Control Switches

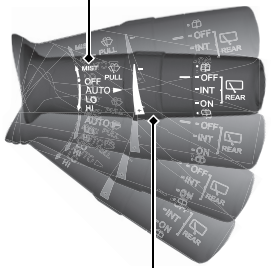


Wipers and Washers

P. 202

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

MIST
OFF
AUTO: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe



Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

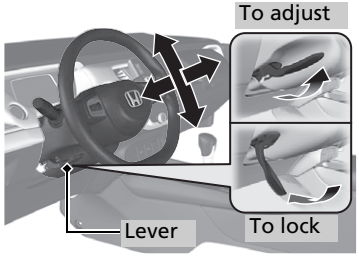
Adjustment Ring
−: Low Sensitivity
+: High Sensitivity

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 207

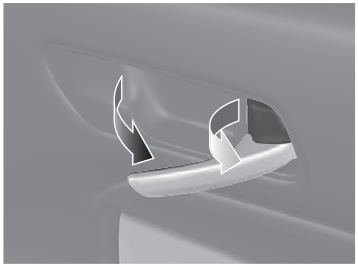
- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

P. 176

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



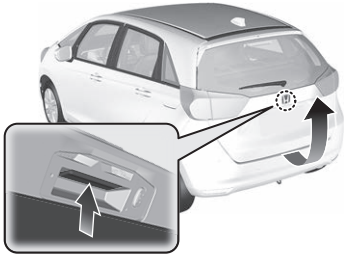
Tailgate P. 179

Models without keyless access system

- With all the doors unlocked, press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

Models with keyless access system

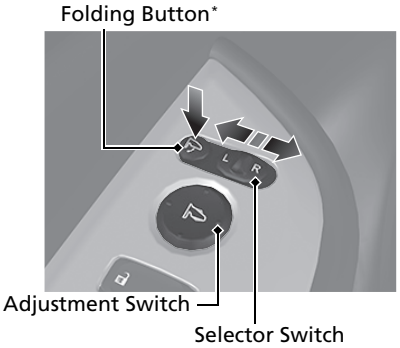
- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote on you.



Power Door Mirrors

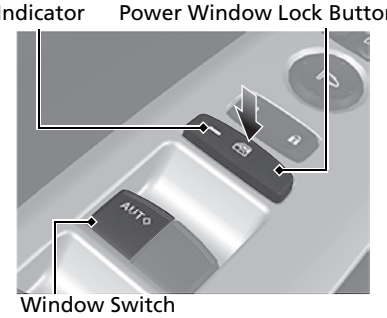
P. 209

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button* to fold in and out the door mirrors.



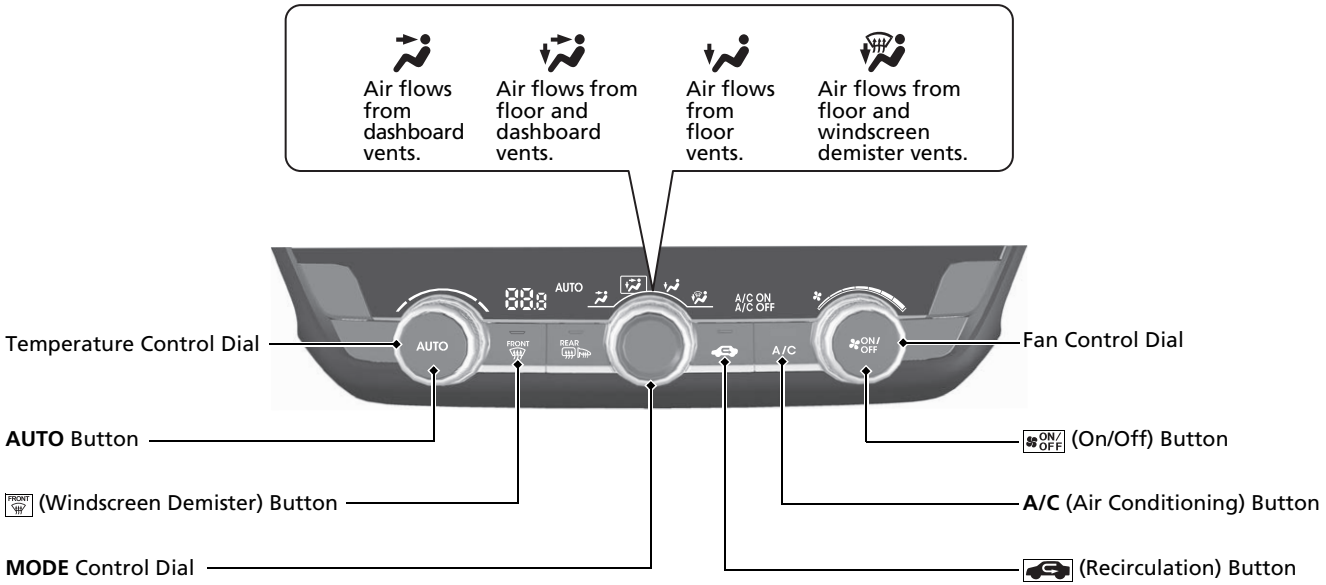
Power Windows P. 184

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



Climate Control System P. 233

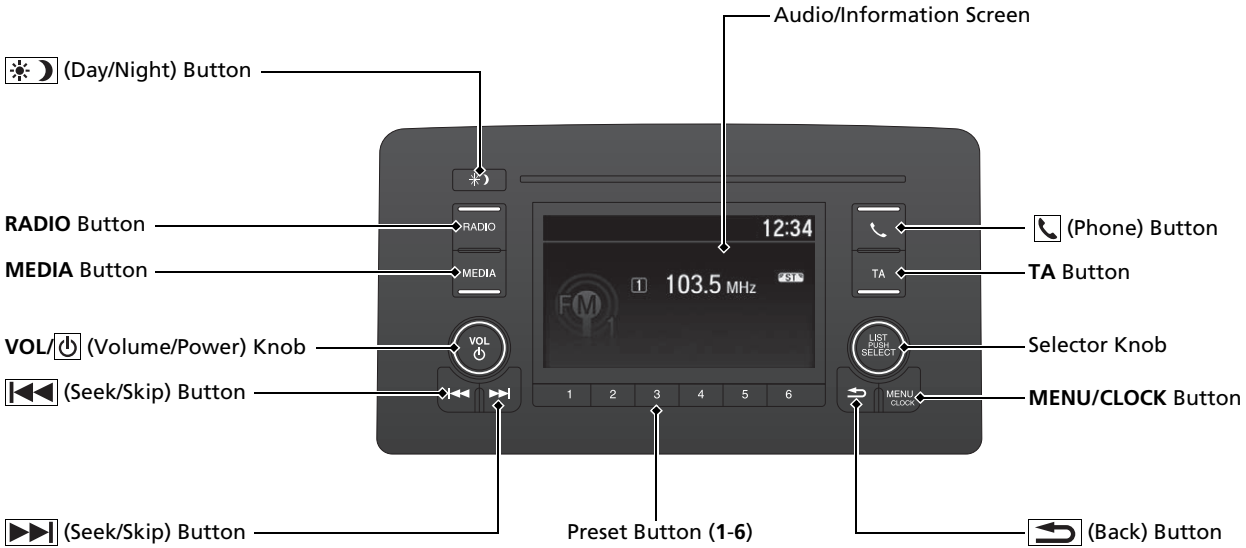
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.



Features P. 237

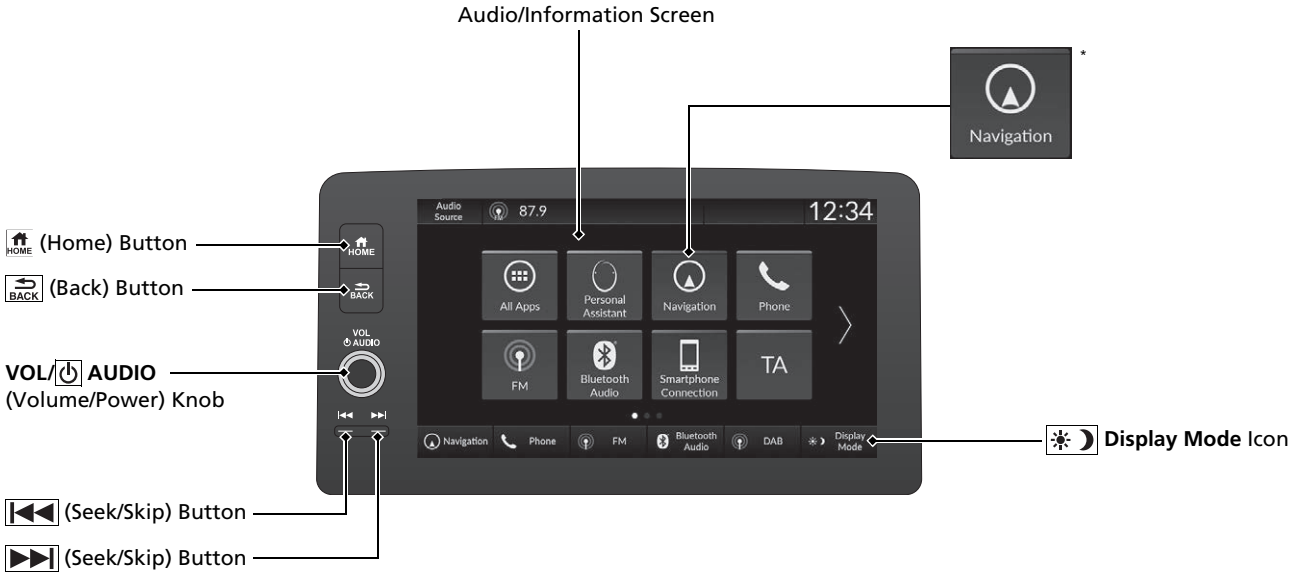
Audio System P. 238

Models with colour audio P. 241



Models with Display Audio P. 285

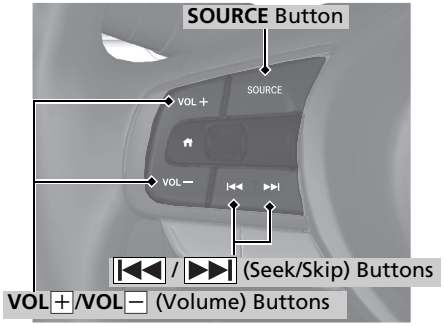
For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



* Not available on all models

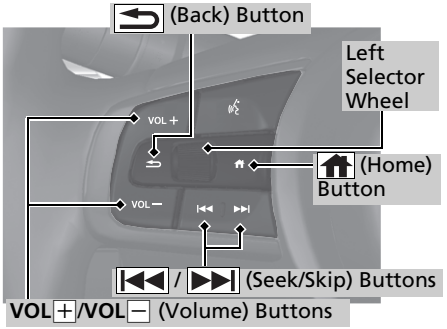
Audio Remote Controls

Models with colour audio P. 243



- **VOL+/VOL−** (Volume) Buttons
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE** Button
  Press to change the audio mode:
  FM1→FM2→DAB1→DAB2→LW→AM (MW)→USB/iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio.
- ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio: Press ⏮ / ⏭ to change the preset radio station.
  iPod, USB device, or *Bluetooth*® Audio:
  Press ⏮ / ⏭ to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  Radio: Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change the strong station.
  USB device or *Bluetooth*® Audio:
  Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change a folder/group.

Models with Display Audio P. 289



- **VOL+/VOL−** (Volume) Buttons
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel
  When selecting the audio mode
  Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.
  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  FM/AM/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio

  Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

- ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
  Radio: Press ⏮ / ⏭ to change the preset radio station.
  iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:
  Press ⏮ / ⏭ to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.
  Radio: Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change the strong station.
  USB device:
  Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change a folder.
  iPod: Press and hold ⏮ / ⏭ to change a song.

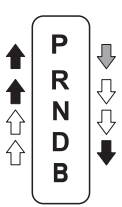
  Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

Driving P. 391

Transmission P. 403

● Select P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.

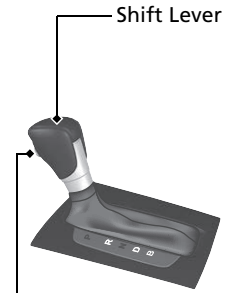
Shift selection



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.



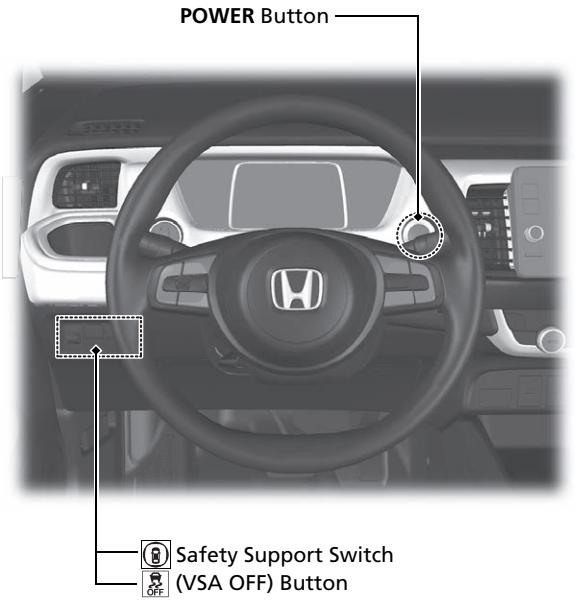
P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:
For normal driving.

B **Drive (B)**
Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.



CMBS On and Off P. 439

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

VSA On and Off P. 421

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Deflation Warning System P. 423

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- An initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

Adjustable Speed Limiter

P. 407

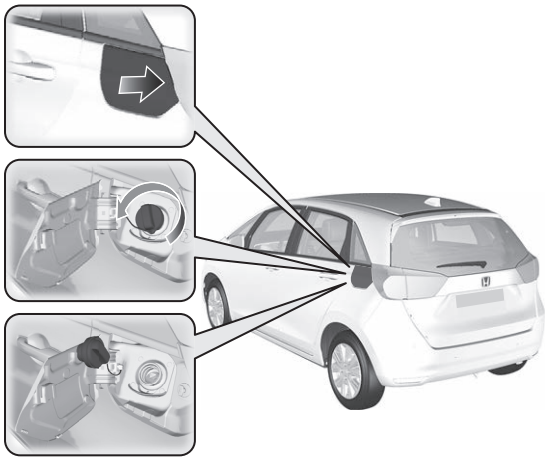
This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **SET/–** button when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h (18 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph).

Refueling P. 520

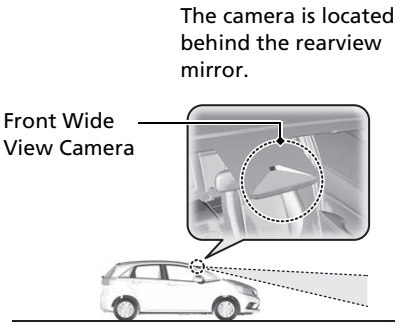
Fuel recommendation:	Except Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan and Tunisian models **EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel** **Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher** Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan and Tunisian models **Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher**
Fuel tank capacity:	**40 L (8.8 Imp gal)**

1. Unlock the driver's door. P. 176
2. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
3. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
4. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
5. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda Sensing P. 432

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 435

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, pedestrians, or riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 447

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 467

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 478

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 487

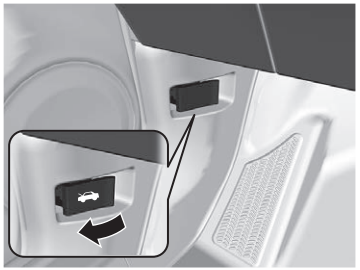
Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

Maintenance P. 525

Under the Bonnet P. 543

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



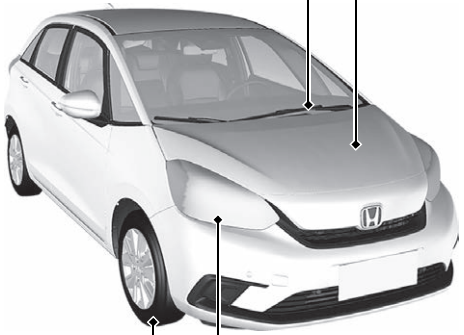
2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 563

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



Tyres P. 568

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Lights P. 558

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Handling the Unexpected P. 591

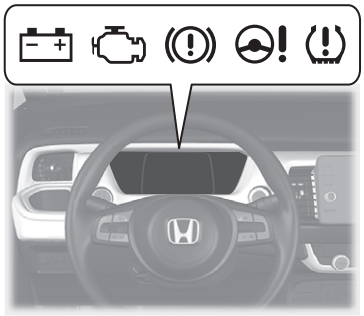
Flat Tyre P. 593

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the tyre repair kit.



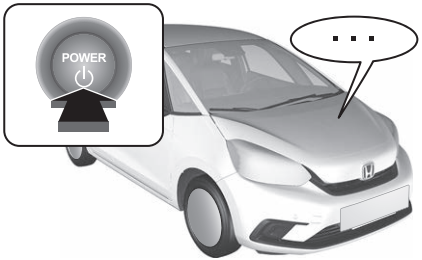
Indicators Come On P. 616

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



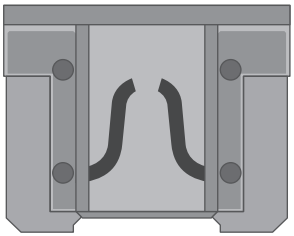
Power System Won't Start P. 607

- If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Blown Fuse P. 623

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Overheating P. 614

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the power system cool down.



Emergency Towing P. 629

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q **The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?**

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **POWER** button.



Q **The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?**

A The shift lever should be moved to P.



Q **Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?**

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 503

Q **The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?**

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



Q **Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?**

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?**

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Q **Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?**

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q **Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?**

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q **I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?**

A The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.
➡ **Deflation Warning System** ➡P. 423

Q **Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?**

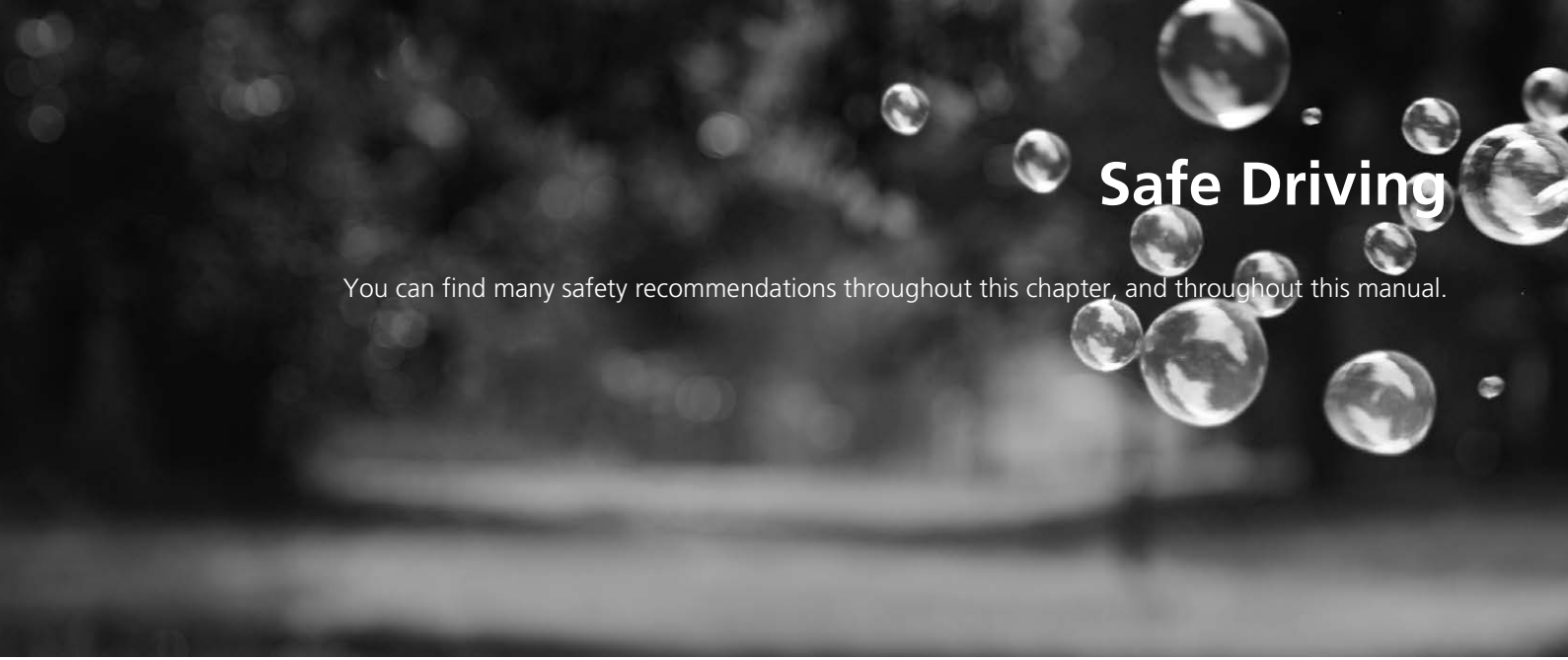
A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.

Q **Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q **Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?**

A Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.



Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 38
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 40

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 42
- Fastening a Seat Belt 48
- Seat Belt Inspection 54

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 56
- Types of Airbags 58
- Front Airbags (SRS) 58
- Driver's Knee Airbag 64
- Centre Airbag 66
- Side Airbags 68
- Side Curtain Airbags 71
- Airbag System Indicators 73
- Airbag Care 75

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 76
- Safety of Infants and Small Children ... 79
- Safety of Larger Children 98

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 101

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 102

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

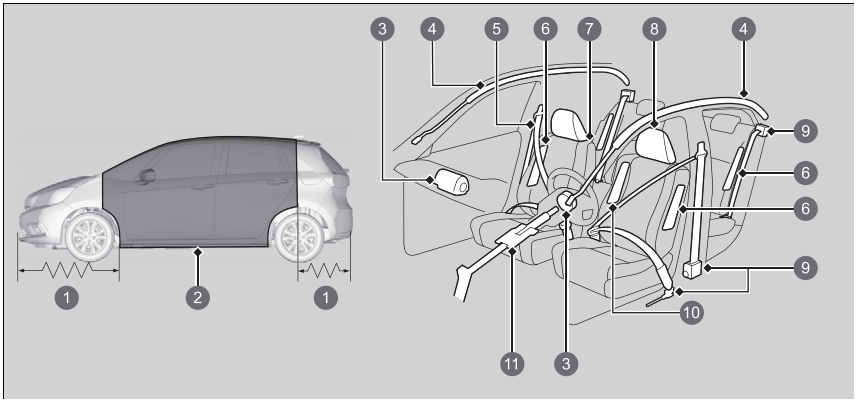
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



❶ Crush Zones
❷ Safety Cage
❸ Front Airbags
❹ Side Curtain Airbags
❺ Seat Belts
❻ Side Airbags
❼ Seats and Seat-Backs
❽ Head Restraints
❾ Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners
❿ Centre Airbag
⓫ Collapsible Steering Column

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

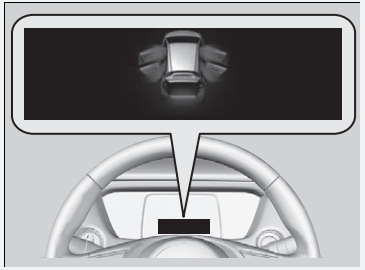
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 211
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 218
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 48
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
  ➡ **Child Safety** P. 76

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Child Safety** P. 76

About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

Continued

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

■ Seat Belt Reminder



■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink if you start driving without fastening a seat belt.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

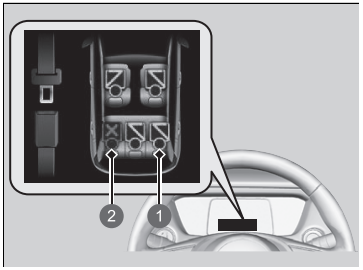
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

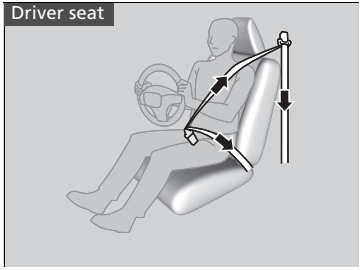
The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened and closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastened or unfastened their seat belt.

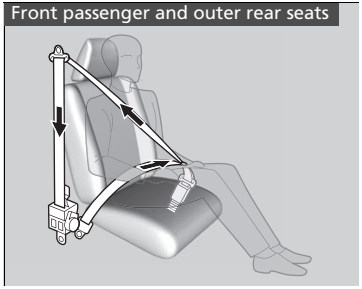
The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unfastened while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

Driver seat



Front passenger and outer rear seats



The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the driver's knee airbag.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

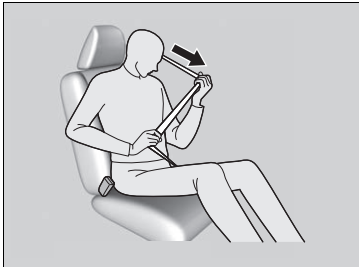
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

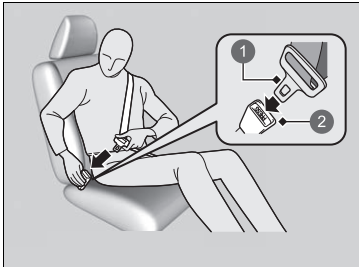
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat (see illustrations for correct seating posture):

Adjusting the Seats P. 211



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

About Your Seat Belts P. 42
Seat Belt Inspection P. 54



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

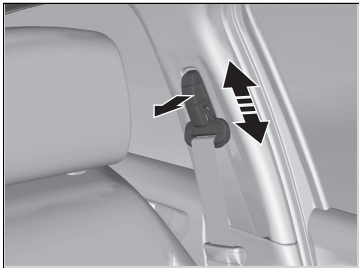
To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

Continued

■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



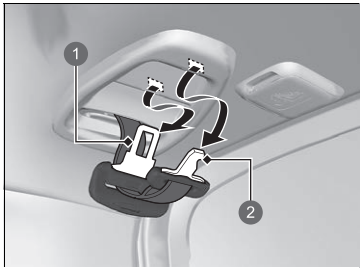
1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

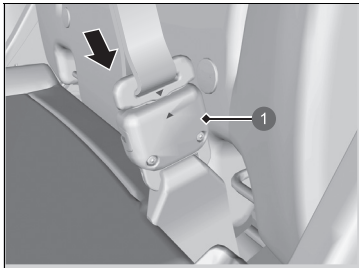
The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor



❶ Latch Plate
❷ Small Latch Plate

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.



❶ Anchor Buckle

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.

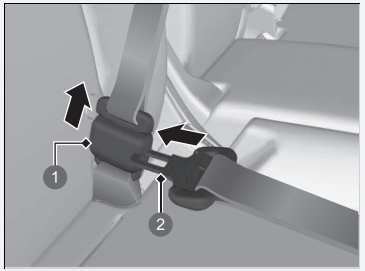
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

⚠WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

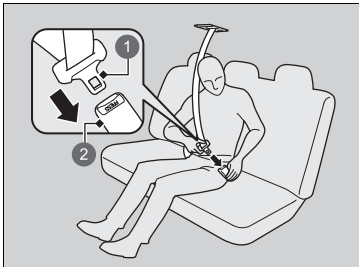
Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.



❶ Anchor Buckle
❷ Latch Plate

Continued



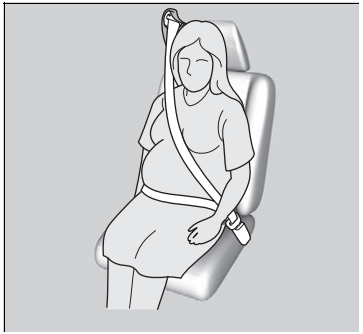
1 Latch Plate
2 Buckle

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle.
Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

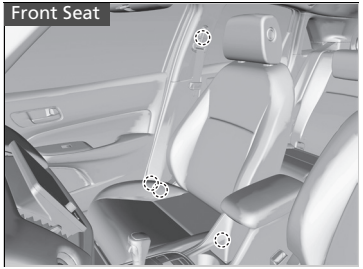
WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

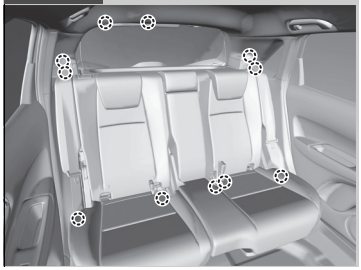
Anchorage Points

Front Seat



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

Rear Seat



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, driver's knee, front side, rear side, front centre and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Four side airbags, one for the driver, one for the front passenger and two for the rear outboard.
  The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs.
  All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- One centre airbag. The airbag is stored in the centre side of driver's seat-back. It is marked **CENTER AIRBAG**.
- Driver's knee airbag. The knee airbag is stored under the steering column. It is marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- An indicator on the console panel that alerts you that the front passenger’s front airbag has been turned off.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front and driver's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with five types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Driver's knee airbag:** Airbag under the steering column.
- **Centre airbags:** Airbag in the centre side of driver's seat-back.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's, front passenger's and rear outer seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations

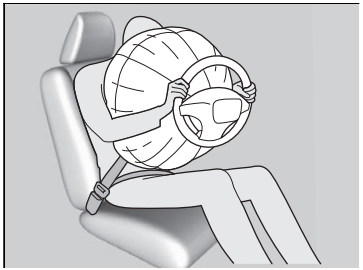
The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

■ **When front airbags should not deploy**

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ **When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

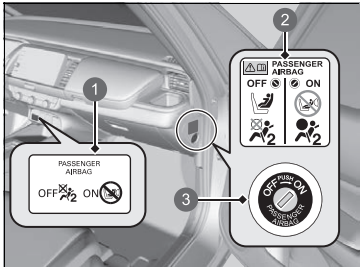
■ **When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe**

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the built-in key.

■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



❶ Passenger Front Airbag **ON/OFF** Indicator
❷ System Warning Label
❸ **ON/OFF** Switch

When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

OFF: The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.
The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

ON: The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

Passenger Front Airbag Off System

⚠WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

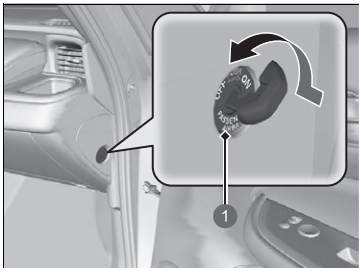
⚠WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Continued

■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1 Passenger Front Airbag **ON/OFF** Switch

1. Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the built-in key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
   ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the built-in key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode is in ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

To deactivate the passenger front airbag system

NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's built-in key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the built-in key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

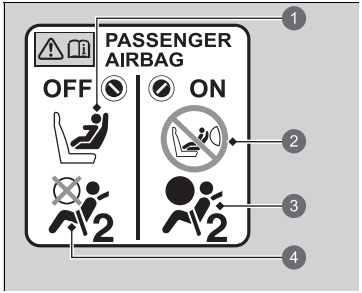
Protecting Infants P. 79

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



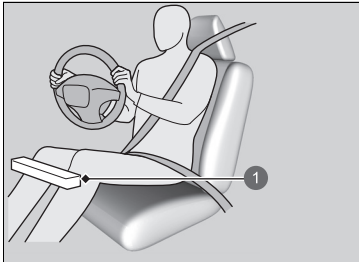
❶ Infant in a rear-facing child restraint system: May ride in front if it is unavoidable
❷ Cannot be seated in front
❸ Passenger front airbag is: Active
❹ Inactive

Driver's Knee Airbag

The driver's knee SRS airbag inflates in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to keep the driver in the proper position and to help to maximise the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbag is designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

■ Housing Locations



The driver's knee airbag is housed under the steering column.

The airbag is marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

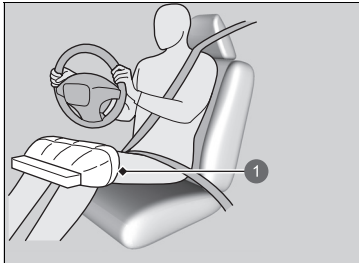
1 Driver's Knee Airbag Location

Driver's Knee Airbag

Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.

The driver should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to sever frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.

■ Operation



When the driver's front airbag inflates, the driver's knee airbag also inflates.

❶ Deployed Driver's Knee Airbag

■ When driver's knee airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

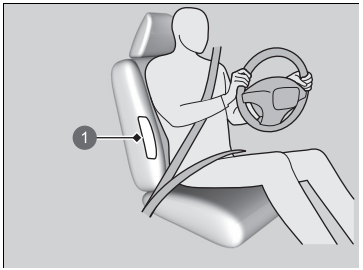
■ When driver's knee airbag may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Centre Airbag

The centre airbag is designed to help to protect the heads of the driver and front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Location

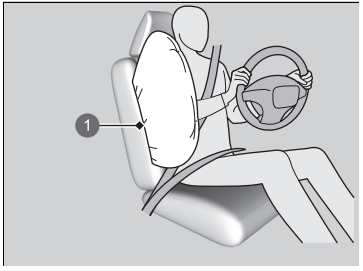


The centre airbag is housed in the centre side of the driver's seat-back.

It is marked **CENTER AIRBAG**.

❶ Centre Airbag Location

■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the centre airbag to deploy.

❶ Centre Airbag

Centre Airbag

Make sure you and any front seat passenger always sit upright. Leaning into the path of the centre airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases your risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the centre airbag. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or hurt someone if an airbag inflate.

Do not open the lid of the console compartment while driving.

Do not cover or replace the driver's seat-back cover without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering driver's seat-back covers can prevent your centre airbag from properly deploying during a side impact.

■ **When the centre airbag deploy with little or no visible damage**

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause the centre airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

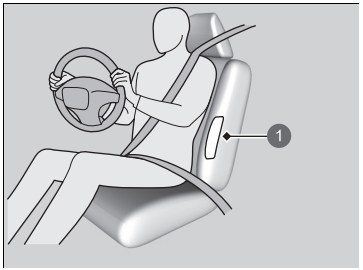
■ **When the centre airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe**

It is possible for the centre airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the centre airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of a front or rear passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

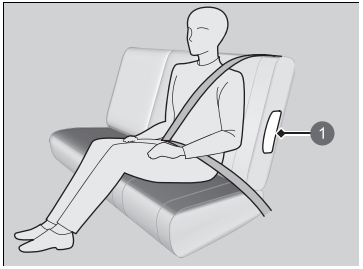
■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's, passenger's and rear outboard seat-backs.

Each are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

❶ Side Airbag Location

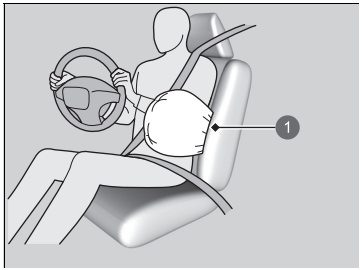


❶ Side Airbag Location

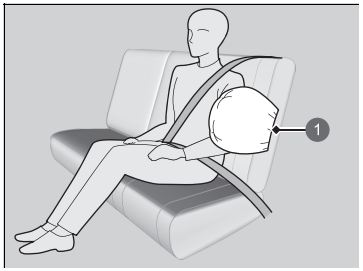
Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Operation



❶ Deployed Side Airbag



❶ Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front and rear passengers lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Continued

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

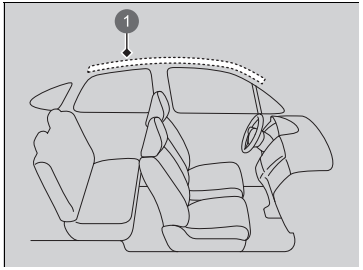
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

❶ Side Curtain Airbag Location

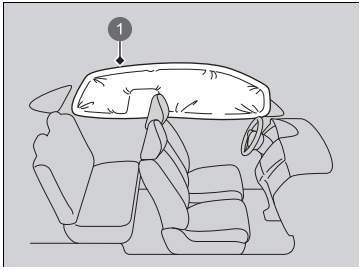
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Continued

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

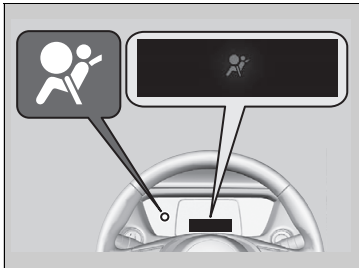
■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

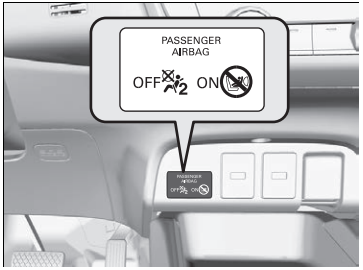
⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Continued

■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

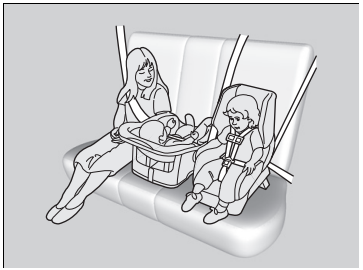
In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.



Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

⚠WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

⚠WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

Protecting Child Passengers

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129 or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 82

Continued

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 184

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

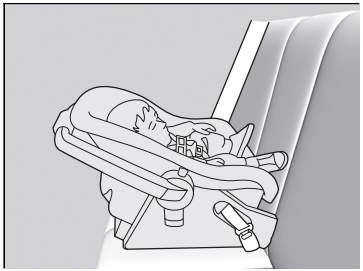
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on the label.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 102

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.
  If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

⚠WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Continued

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

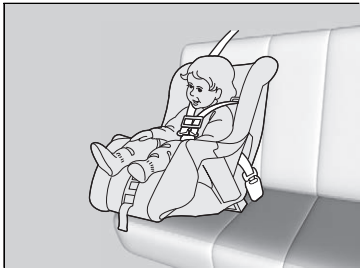
If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

➡ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 61

■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Continued

■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

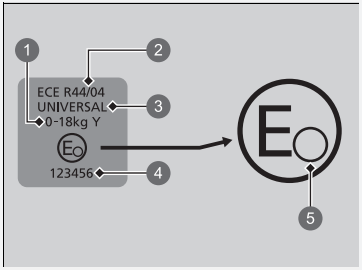
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label

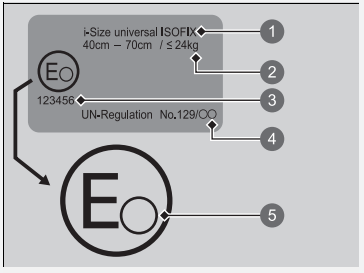


1. "Mass group"
2. Regulation number
3. Category
4. Approval number
5. Country code

Continued

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



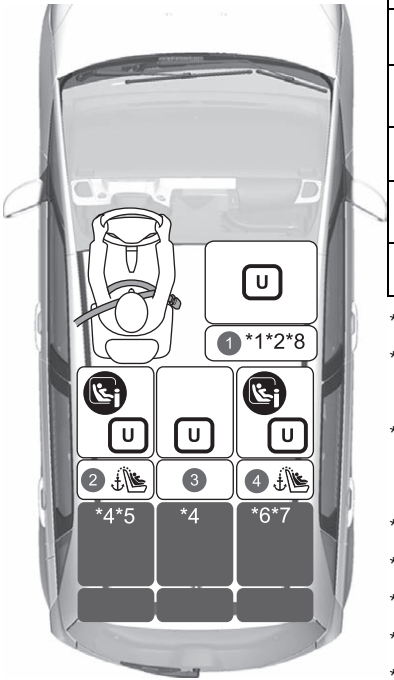
❶ Category
❷ Size and weight indication
❸ Approval number
❹ Regulation number
❺ Country code

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Passenger Airbag ON for left-hand drive type



Passenger Airbag OFF for left-hand drive type



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
i	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the front lock position.
*2: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
*3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side can not be used.
*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.
*7: Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat may cause the centre seat belt to become unusable.
*8: Belt fixed type only.

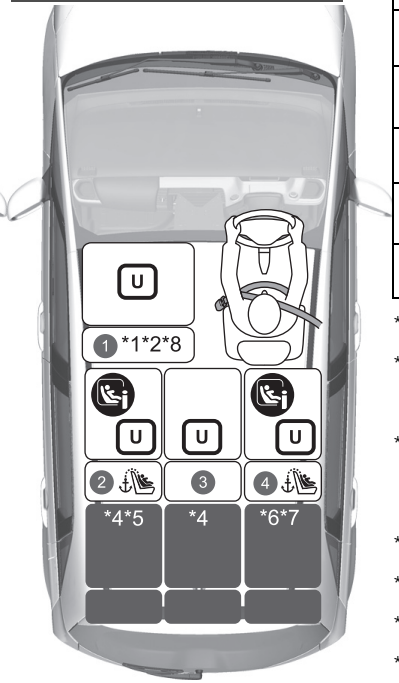
Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Continued

Passenger Airbag ON for right-hand drive type



Passenger Airbag OFF for right-hand drive type



U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
i	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the front lock position.
*2: The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
*3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
*4: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side can not be used.
*5: If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*6: Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.
*7: Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat may cause the centre seat belt to become unusable.
*8: Belt fixed type only.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.

All models

Detail information for CRS installation

Seat position number	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position ❶ Front passenger*1 Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch position ON	❶ Front passenger*1 Front passenger airbag ON/OFF switch position OFF	❷ 2nd row Left	❸ 2nd row Centre	❹ 2nd row Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Less than 10kg	No	Yes	Yes*4	Yes*4	Yes
	Group 0+	Less than 13kg					
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes				
	Group II	15-25kg					
	Group III	22-36kg					
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*3	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes	Yes	Yes*5	Yes*4	Yes*6
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Less than 10kg	No	No	R3*5	No	R3*7
	Group 0+	Less than 13kg					
	Group I	9-18kg					
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	No	F3*5	No	F3*7
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3*2 *8	B3*2 *8	B3*5	B3*4	B3*6

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Continued

*1:Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position and adjust the seat back to the front lock position.
*2:The head restraint must be removed when attaching a forward-reliable junior seat approved by UN R129. Store the removed head restraint in the luggage compartment so that it does not fly during sudden braking or collision.
*3:The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.
*4:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear centre seat, the seat belt on one side can not be used.
*5:If you attach a child restraint system to the rear left seat, the centre seat belt can not be used.
*6:Attaching a child restraint system to the rear right seat may make the centre seat belt unusable.
*7:Attaching an ISOFIX child restraint system to the rear right seat may cause the centre seat belt to become unusable.
*8:Belt fixed type only.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed in seating positions where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.

Europe Genuine CRS List

R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	—	—
Group 0+ up to 13kg	—	—
Group I 9 to 18kg	—	—
Group II, III 15 to 36kg	Honda KIDFIX XP	Universal Semi-universal

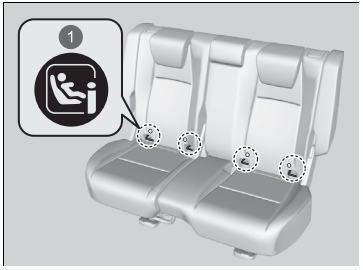
R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40 to 83cm up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe	Infant carrier module
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Base for i-Size
76 to 105cm 8 to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

Continued

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

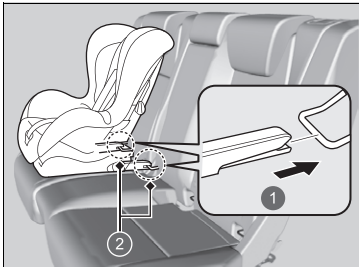
A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors (see illustrations).



❶ Marks

1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.



❶ Rigid Type
❷ Lower Anchorages

3. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

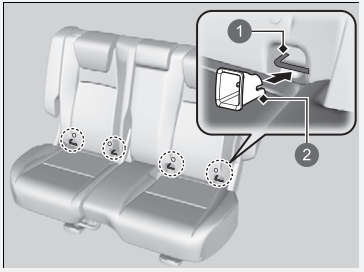
▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

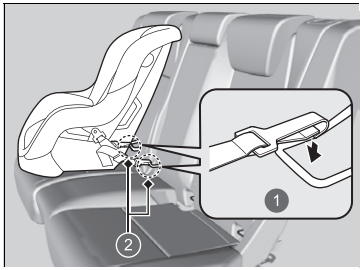
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

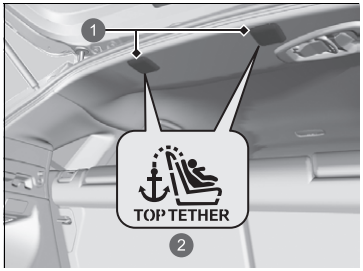
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



❶ Lower Anchorage
❷ Guide-cup



❶ Flexible Type
❷ Lower Anchorages



❶ Cover
❷ Top Tether Anchor Symbol

4. Open the tether anchorage cover.
5. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
6. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
7. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

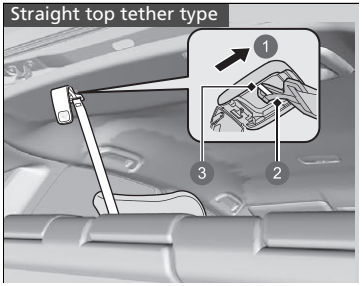
For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

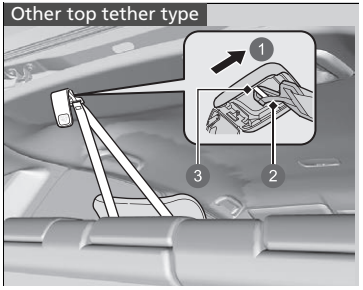
Continued

Straight top tether type



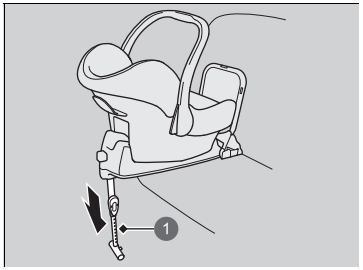
❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Other top tether type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

8. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.



❶ Support Leg

Child restraint system with support leg

4. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

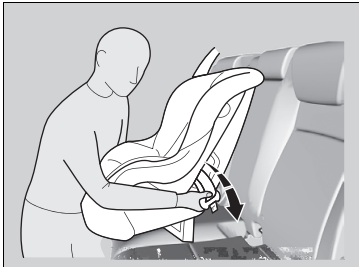
▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.

▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Continued

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

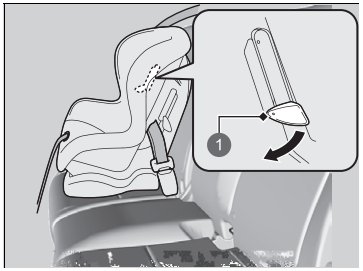
A child restraint system can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.



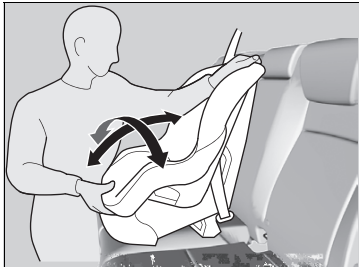
1. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
3. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



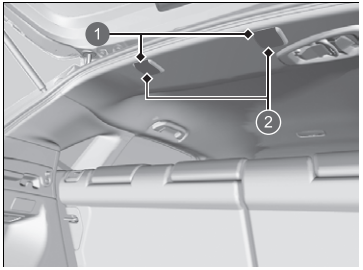
1 Tab



4. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
5. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
6. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.
7. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
8. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

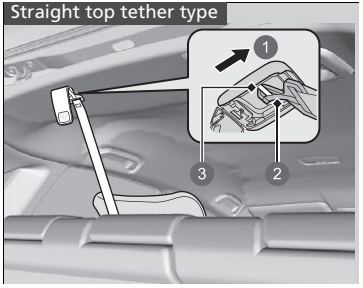
Continued

■ Adding Security with a Tether



❶ Tether Anchorage Points
❷ Cover

Straight top tether type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

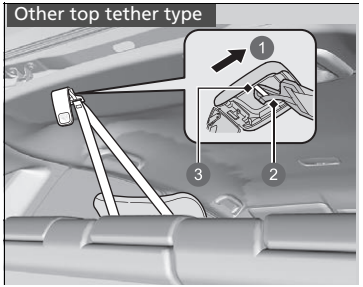
A tether anchorage point is provided on the ceiling for each rear outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
2. Lower the head restraint to its lowest position.
3. Open the anchorage cover.
4. Route the tether strap over the seat-back. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchorages.



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

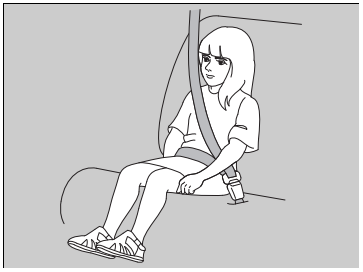
Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

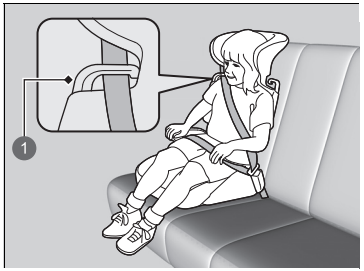
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

❶ Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Continued

■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ **Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever**
- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

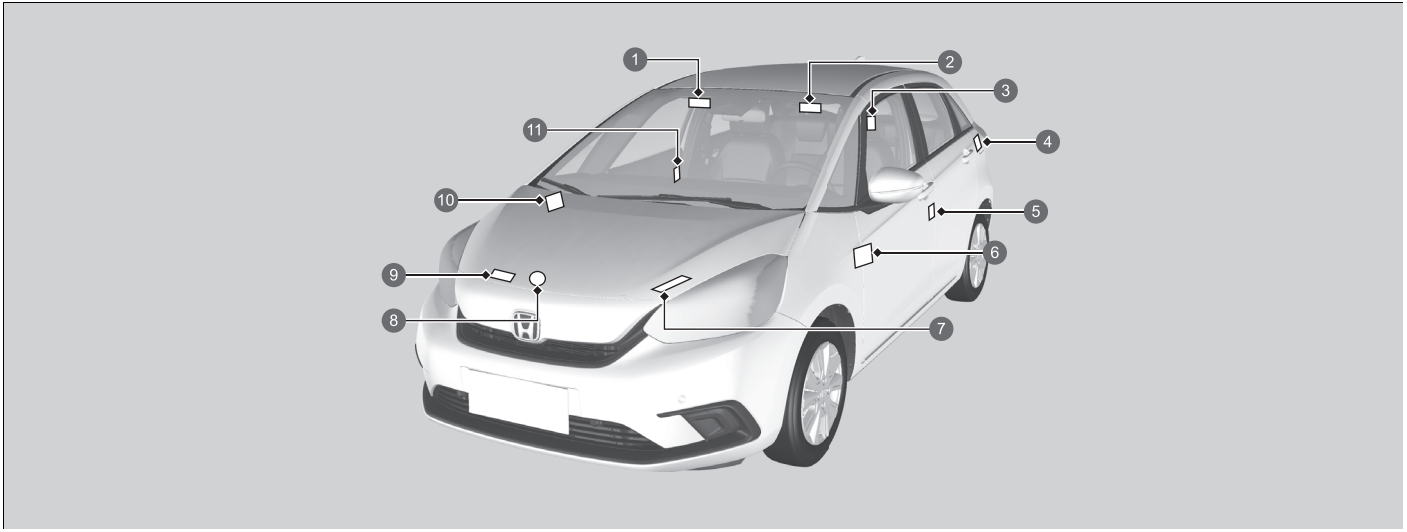
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 76
2. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 76
3. Rear Head Restraint ➔ P. 219
4. Fuel ➔ P. 520
5. Information for Painting (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 588
6. Passenger Front Airbag Off System (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 63
7. 12-volt battery ➔ P. 578

⑧ Radiator Cap
⑨ Air Conditioner ➔ P. 580
⑩ Passenger Front Airbag Off System (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 63
⑪ Information for Painting (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 588

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 106
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages 124
Gauges and Displays
Gauges 137
Driver Information Interface 140

*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→P. 107
*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→P. 109
*1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→P. 108
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→P. 108
*1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→P. 110
*1	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	→P. 110
	Shift Position Indicator	→P. 111
	Transmission System Indicator	→P. 111
*1	Power System Indicator	→P. 109
	Ready Indicator	→P. 110
*1	EV Indicator	→P. 110
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→P. 112
	Low Fuel Indicator	→P. 112
*1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→P. 113

*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→P. 113
*1	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators	→P. 113
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→P. 114
*1	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	→P. 115
	System Message Indicator	→P. 116
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→P. 116
	High Beam Indicator	→P. 117
	Lights On Indicator	→P. 117
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	→P. 117
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	→P. 117
*1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→P. 116
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→P. 114
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	→P. 114
	ECON Mode Indicator	→P. 118

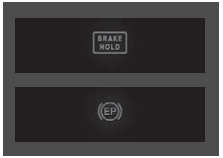
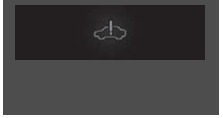
	Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist Indicator	→P. 121
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 119
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	→P. 119
	Security System Alarm Indicator*	→P. 118
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→P. 118
	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	→P. 120
*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/ Green)	→P. 120
	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)	→P. 120
*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green)	→P. 121
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→P. 121
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)	→P. 123

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

 * Not available on all models

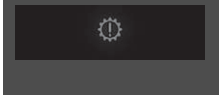
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released. • Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. • Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. • The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 618 • **Comes on along with the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)** - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 620 • **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 618	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.	• **Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 620	—
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 500	
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 500	—

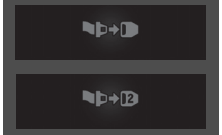
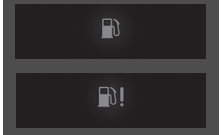
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. • Comes on if there is a problem with the cooperative control with regenerative braking, the electric servo brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Avoid high speeds and sudden braking. Take the vehicle to a dealer immediately.	
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the sonar sensor. • Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum load limit is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum load limit. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
	Power System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system. • Comes on when the High Voltage battery temperature becomes high.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Power System Indicator Comes On** P. 622	

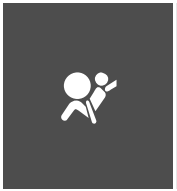
Continued

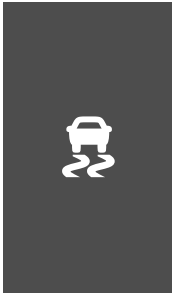
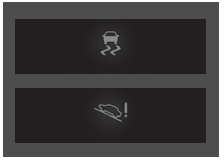
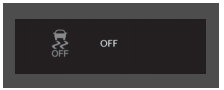
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Ready Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 397	
	**EV** Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating.	—	—
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Blinks while driving** - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the power system for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take your vehicle to a dealer. ➡ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 617	
	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not charging.	• Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 616	

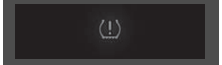
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	**Shifting** P. 403	—
	Transmission System Indicator	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Blinks while driving - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	
			• Immediately park your car in a safe place. **Emergency Towing** P. 629 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45	
		• Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode to on, and a red icon is displayed on the driver information interface.	• The indicator goes off when you and the rear seat passengers fasten their seat belts. • The beeper sounds when the indicator is on while driving. • When the seat belt has fastened, the indicator will turn off and a green icon is displayed on the driver information interface. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45	
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 5.3 litres/1.17 Imp gal left). • Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. • **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

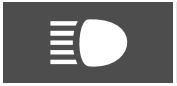
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 503	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental restraint system - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators	• When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds. When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.	➡ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** P. 61	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active. • Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system or hill start assist system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 420 ➔ **Hill start assist system** P. 399	
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➔ **VSA On and Off** P. 421	
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.	• **Comes on while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➔ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 619	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete. • Comes on and stays on when: - One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. - The system has not been initialised.	• **Comes on while driving** - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. • **Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures** - The system needs to be initialised. ➡ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 423	 
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.	• **Blinks and remains on** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

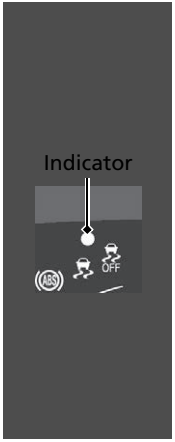
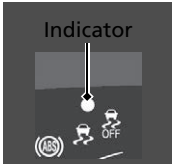
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select (information) to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 140 • Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly. • The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed.	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	➡ **Auto High-Beam** P. 199	—
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 558	—
		• Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➡ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 505	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	**Lights** P. 191	—
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	**Fog Lights** P. 195	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	**Fog Lights** P. 195	—

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Right-hand drive type Depress and hold the brake pedal before setting the power mode to ON. All models • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.	
	Security System Alarm Indicator*	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	**Security System Alarm*** P. 182	—
	ECON Mode Indicator	• Comes on when ECON mode is on.	**ECON Mode** P. 405	

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when the adjustable speed limiter is set.	**Adjustable Speed Limiter** P. 407	—
	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when you press the **RES/+** button or **SET/–** button.	**Intelligent Speed Limiter** P. 413	—

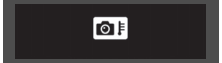
Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	—
	Adaptive Cruise Control (**ACC**) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the  button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when you press the **RES/+** button or **SET/–** button.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447	—
	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

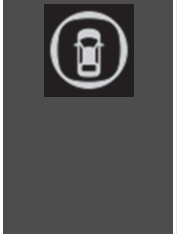
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Lane Keeping Assist System (**LKAS**) Indicator (Green)	• Comes on when you press the LKAS button.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 467	—
	Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist Indicator	• Comes on when all activation conditions for the Road Departure Mitigation system are satisfied and lane markers are detected.	➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 478	—
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, blind spot information* or CMBS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395	—
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected and then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system, blind spot information* and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494	
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.	

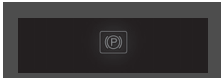
 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	Models with the blind spot information system • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice has accumulated in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor.	• **Comes on while driving** - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. ➡ **Blind spot information System*** P. 427	
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/ Gray)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, blind spot information* and CMBS are on. • Lights up in green and gray when the Road Departure Mitigation system, blind spot information* or CMBS is off. • Lights up in gray when the Road Departure Mitigation system, blind spot information* and CMBS are off.	➡ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 482 ➡ **Blind spot information System*** P. 427 ➡ **CMBS On and Off** P. 439	

* Not available on all models

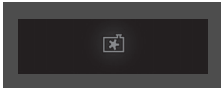
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the (home) button, select ⓘ (information), then press the left selector wheel to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

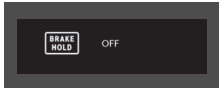
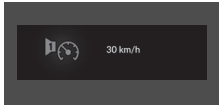
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the vehicle is no longer able to run due to a malfunction.	• Immediately stop in a safe place.
 (Amber)	• Appears when there is a risk that the vehicle will move unexpectedly after you have stopped due to a malfunction with the vehicle.	• While the vehicle is stopped, apply the parking brake. **Parking Brake** P. 496 • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. • Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	• Disappears when all doors and the tailgate are closed.
	Models with parking sensor system • Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the acoustic vehicle alerting system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when there is a problem with the 12-volt battery charging system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the power mode is in ON.	• There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
	• Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.	• **Appears while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➡ **If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears** P. 616
	• Appears when the engine oil level is low while the engine is running.	• **Appears while driving** - Immediately stop in a safe place. ➡ **If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears** P. 622
	• Appears when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.	• **Appears while driving** - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.	• **Appears while driving** - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
 (White)	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature is near its upper limit.	• Drive slowly to prevent overheating.
 (Red)	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	➡ **Overheating** P. 614
	• Appears if there is a problem with the cooling system.	• Drive slowly to prevent overheating and have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.
	Models with colour audio • Appears while you are customizing the settings and change the shift position from P to another position.	➡ **Settings*** P. 154

 * Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 500
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the driver's seat belt. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 500
	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.	• Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 500
	• Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	• Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 496
	• Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.	➔ **Speed Alarm** P. 149

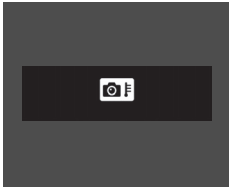
Continued

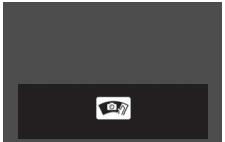
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system* or keyless starting system.	• **Appears constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.	• Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door. ➡ **Keyless Remote Reminder** P. 190
	• Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.	➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 579
	• Appears when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. Right-hand drive type • Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door.	➡ **Turning on the Power** P. 397
	• Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	—
	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.	• Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. ➡ **POWER Button** P. 188
	• Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to turn on the power system or the key is not within operating range to turn on the power system. The beeper sounds six times.	• Bring the back of the keyless remote into contact with the **POWER** button. ➡ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 608

 * Not available on all models

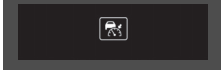
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if you press the **POWER** button while the vehicle is moving.	➡ **Emergency Power System Off** P. 609
	• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.	• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the **POWER** button.
	• Appears if you press the **POWER** button to turn the power system off without the shift lever in P.	• Move the shift lever to P, then press the **POWER** button twice.
	• Appears when the power system temperature is high.	• Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline. • Park in a safe place, and cool the system down. ➡ **Overheating** P. 614
	• Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is low.	• Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline. • Goes off once you start driving as the High Voltage battery warms up.
	• Appears if the power system is in diagnostic mode.	• You may notice a decrease in available power. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • As a result of diagnostics, the power system indicator may come on. ➡ **Power System Indicator** P. 109

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is too low to operate (approx. -30°C or below).	• You can start the power system and use the climate control system to warm up the interior, which will also warm the High Voltage battery enough for you to drive the vehicle.
	• Appears when the High Voltage battery and other system control temperatures are too low to operate (approx. -40°C or below).	• You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location. • Contact a dealer if necessary.
	• Appears when the High Voltage battery is running extremely low.	• Contact a dealer immediately.
	• Appears if there is a problem with the auto high-beam.	• Manually operate the headlight switch. • If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.
	• Appears if the temperature inside the front wide view camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated.	• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. • **Disappears** - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally. ➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494 ➔ **Honda Sensing** P. 432

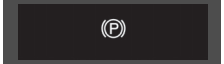
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if the area around the front wide view camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front. • May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) or when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.	• When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494 ➡ **Honda Sensing** P. 432
	• Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
 (White)	• Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when you set the power mode to ON, without fastening the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC.	• Reduce the speed, then set ACC. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed.	• Reduce the speed, then reset ACC. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears if ACC cannot be set due to repeated deceleration, driving on a long downward slope, or excess vehicle weight.	• Wait awhile, then reset ACC. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears just before ACC is automatically cancelled due to repeated deceleration, driving on a long downward slope, or excess vehicle weight. (Will automatically open until the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is the maximum set in distance settings.)	• ACC will be cancelled automatically. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when the **SET/–**, **RES/+**, **CANCEL**, interval button or **LIM** button is pressed while ACC, adjustable speed limiter or intelligent speed limiter is off.	• After pressing the  button, press the **SET/–**, **RES/+**, **CANCEL**, interval button or **LIM** button. ➡ **Adjustable Speed Limiter** P. 407 ➡ **Intelligent Speed Limiter** P. 413 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the interval button is pressed in adjustable speed limiter/intelligent speed limiter mode.	• After switching to ACC, press the interval button. ➡ **Adjustable Speed Limiter** P. 407 ➡ **Intelligent Speed Limiter** P. 413 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when the vehicle ahead of you resumes driving, after your vehicle has been stopped automatically by ACC.	• Press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button or depress the accelerator pedal to resume. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when the shift position is changed to any position other than D while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button while the shift position is in any position other than D.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.	• ACC cannot be set. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447

Continued

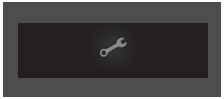
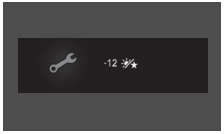
Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 496
	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button while the parking brake is applied.	• ACC cannot be set. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 496
	• Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 500 ➔ **Parking Brake** P. 496
	• Appears when pressing the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.	• ACC cannot be set. ➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
	• Appears if ACC is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.
	• Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.	• Immediately depress the brake pedal.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.	• Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447 ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 435
 (Amber)	• Appears if the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane.	• Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 467 ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 478
 (Red)	• Appears if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all and the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane. A beeper will also sound.	• Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 467
	• Blinks if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all. A beeper will also sound. If the driver continues to drive in this manner, the beeper will turn to a single long beep and LKAS will be deactivated.	• Take direct control of the steering; the message will disappear. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 467
 (White)	• Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.	• Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 478

Continued

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.	• If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. ➔ **Indicators** P. 106

Models with service reminder system

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 30 days.	• The remaining days will be counted down per day. ➔ **Service Reminder System*** P. 530
	• Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 10 days.	• Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible. ➔ **Service Reminder System*** P. 530
	• Appears when the indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	• Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder. ➔ **Service Reminder System*** P. 530

 * Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, high voltage battery charge level gauge, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Speedometer

You can set the speedometer and the displayed measurements to read in either km/h and mph.

➡ **Change Units** P. 152

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches 0. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Continued

■ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charging remains the same.

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the outside temperature blinks for 10 seconds.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345

 * Not available on all models

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows traffic signs while driving.
The indicator blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition System is exceeded.

■ Clock

Shows the clock.
You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock on the driver information interface.

➔ **Clock** P. 166
➔ **Clock Setup** P. 304

■ Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS.

➔ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 467

Traffic Sign Recognition System

You can turn the Traffic Sign Recognition System Over Speed Warning on and off.

➔ **Settings*** P. 154
➔ **Customized Features** P. 345

* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

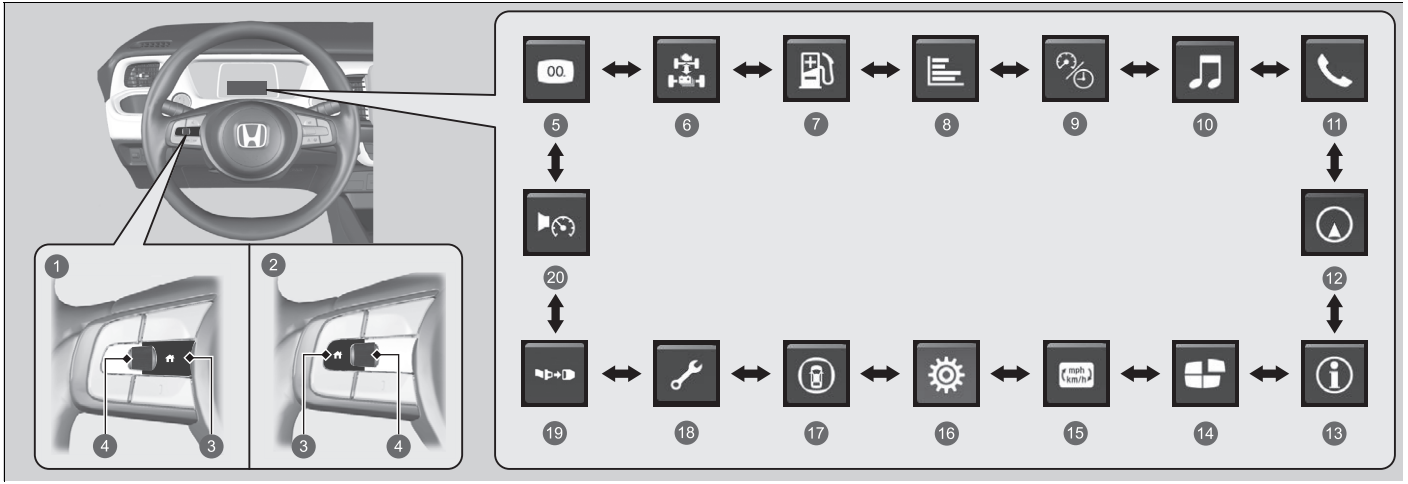
■ Switching the Display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the (back) button.

You can add or delete the meter contents.
➢ **Customize Display** P. 153



❶ Models with Display Audio
❷ Models with colour audio
❸ (Home) Button
❹ Left Selector Wheel
❺ Simple ➔ P. 142
❻ Power Flow ➔ P. 143
❼ Range & Fuel ➔ P. 144
❽ Fuel Economy ➔ P. 145
❾ Speed & Time ➔ P. 146
❿ Audio* ➔ P. 148
⓫ Phone* ➔ P. 148
⓬ Navigation* ➔ P. 148
⓭ Information ➔ P. 153
⓮ Customize Display ➔ P. 153
⓯ Change Units ➔ P. 152
⓰ Settings* ➔ P. 154
⓱ Safety Support ➔ P. 151
⓲ Maintenance* ➔ P. 150
⓳ Seat Belts ➔ P. 150
⓴ Speed Alarm ➔ P. 149

* Not available on all models

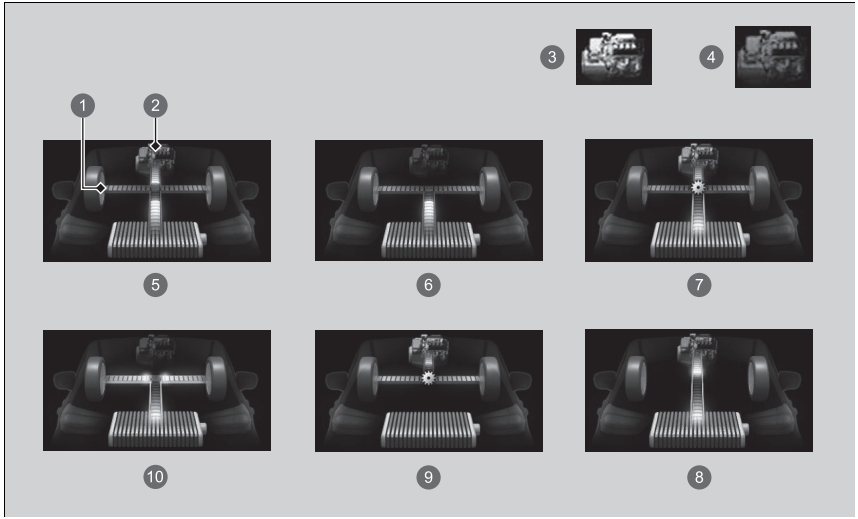
Continued

■ Simple

By selecting the simple mode, you can set the meter to display the minimum information necessary.

Power Flow

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.



❶ Power Flow ❷ Engine ❸ Engine ON ❹ Engine OFF

❺ **Hybrid (HV)**: Power is supplied by the motor and the engine.

❻ **Electric Vehicle (EV)**: Power is supplied by the motor.

❼ **Engine (Direct Drive)**: The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

❽ The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

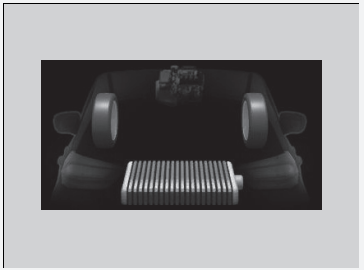
❾ Power is being supplied by only the engine.

❿ **Regeneration**: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery.

Continued

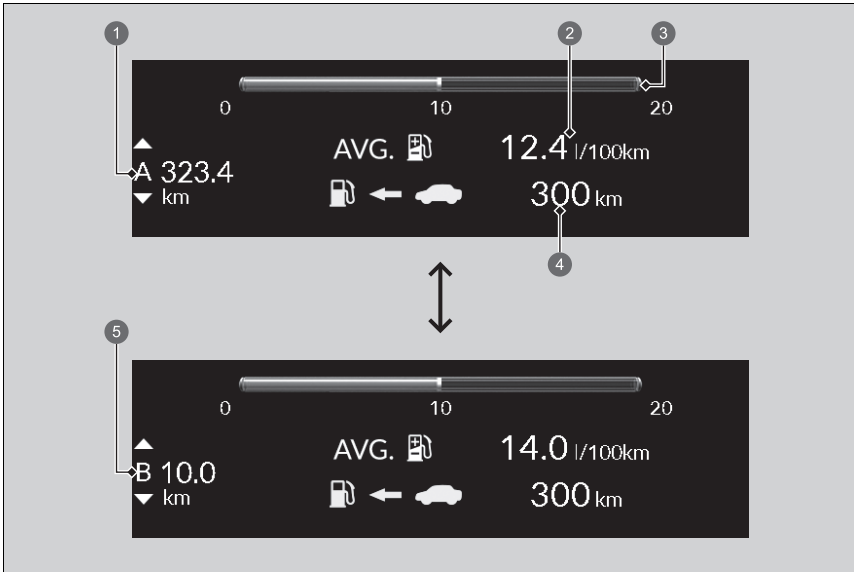
Power Flow

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



■ Range / Fuel / Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Average Fuel Economy
3. Instant Fuel Economy
4. Range
5. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100km or mpg. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or mpg.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

■ Fuel Economy

Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in l/100 km or mpg.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

Trip meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by rolling the left selector wheel.

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Speed & Time

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip meter A
2. Elapsed Time
3. Average Speed
4. Trip meter B

■ Trip meter

➡ **Trip meter** P. 145

■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Settings*** P. 154
➡ **Customized Features** P. 345

Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Settings*** P. 154
➡ **Customized Features** P. 345

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Audio*

Shows the current audio information.

➔ **Basic Operation** P. 241, 286

■ Phone*

Shows the current phone information.

➔ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 269, 359

■ Navigation*

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➔ **Apple CarPlay** P. 337
➔ **Android Auto** P. 341

Navigation*

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 345

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

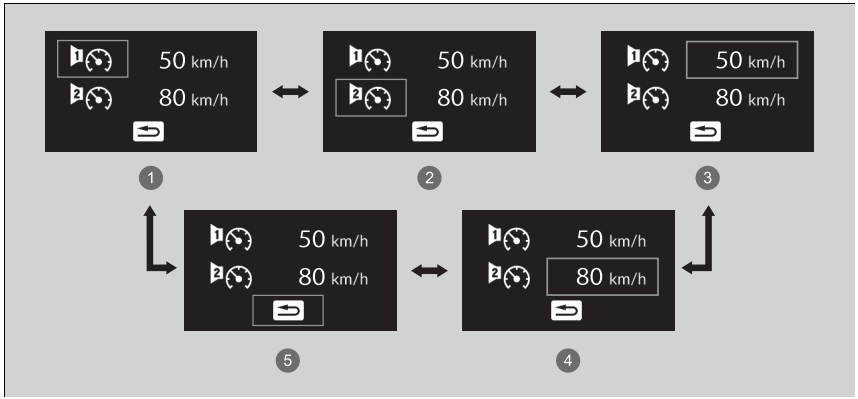
➔ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

 * Not available on all models

Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting [50 km/h (30mph)*1]
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting [80 km/h (50mph)*1]
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

Continued

■ Seat Belts

Appears when any of the seat belts are latched or unlatched.

■ Maintenance*

Shows the service reminder system.

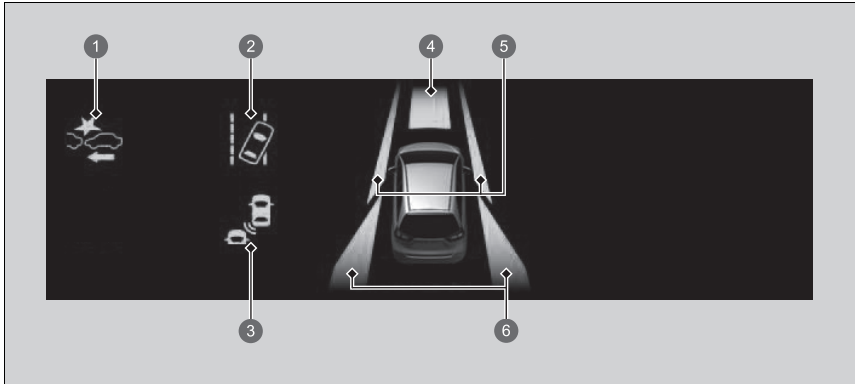
➔ **Service Reminder System*** P. 530

 * Not available on all models

Safety Support

Indicates the state of the Road Departure Mitigation system and blind spot information system*, and CMBS such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the state of any of the above mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



1. CMBS Icon and State Info
2. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and State Info
3. Blind spot information System Icon and State Info*
4. Area Info for CMBS
5. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
6. Area Info for Blind spot information System*

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.
- **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 482
- **Blind spot information System*** P. 427
- **CMBS On and Off** P. 439

You can also confirm the state of the each function by the colour of the safety support indicator.
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 121
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray)** P. 123

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Change Units

Enables you to show another speed unit on the driver information interface and set the displayed measurements to read in either km/h and mph.

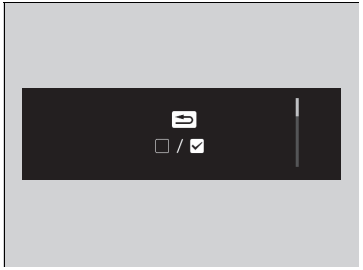
Press and hold the left selector wheel when you select (mph km/h) on the driver information interface. Each time you do this, the unit will change from km/h to mph or vice versa. After this, a confirmation screen will appear for a few seconds.

■ Customize Display

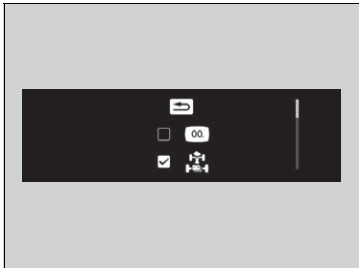
Change the settings to your liking.

■ Arrange content

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select , then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select , then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

■ Information

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124

Customize Display

Icons that are gray cannot be removed from the home screen.

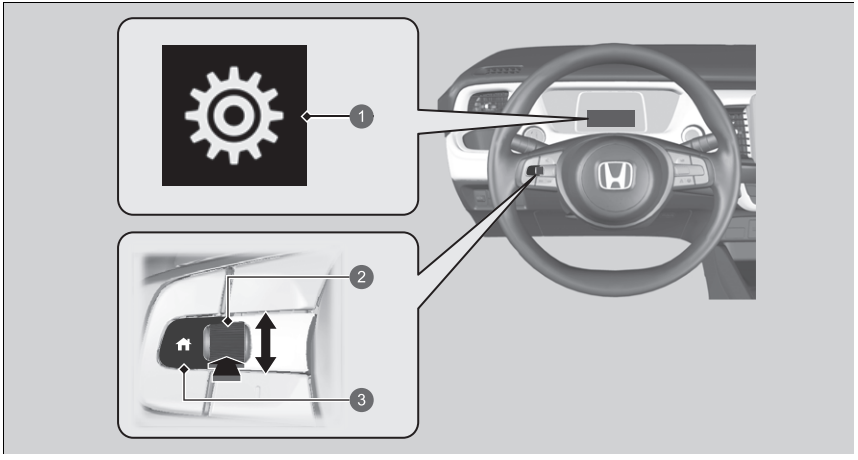
Continued

■ Settings*

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

■ How to customize

Press the [home] (home) button, then select the (settings) screen by rolling the left selector wheel while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in [P]. Then press the left selector wheel.



❶ Driver Information Interface
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ [home] (Home) Button

Settings*

To customize other features, roll the left selector wheel.

List of customizable options P. 155
Example of customization settings P. 159

When you customize settings, shift to [P].

 * Not available on all models

■ **List of customizable options**

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	**Initialise/Cancel**
Driver Assist System Setup	**Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance**	Changes the distance at which Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alerts.	**Far/Normal***1**/Near**
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	**ON/OFF***1
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	**Early/Normal/Delayed***1
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	**ON/OFF***1
	Traffic Sign Recognition System	Turns the traffic sign recognition system on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Traffic Sign Recognition System Over Speed Warning	Turns the traffic sign recognition system over speed warning on and off.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Language**	Changes the displayed language.	**ENGLISH**[*1]**/DEUTSCH/ ITALIANO/FRANÇAIS/ ESPAÑOL/Polski/ PORTUGUÊS/ NEDERLANDS/DANSK/ SVENSKA/NORSK/ SUOMI/РУССКИЙ/TÜRK**
	Warning Message	Turns the driver information interface warning message on and off.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	**When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset**[*1]
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	**When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF/Manual Reset**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Meter Setup	**Alarm Volume Control**	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	**Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**
	Speed/Distance Units	Selects the trip meter units.	Left-hand drive type **km/h·km**[*1]**/mph·miles** Right-hand drive type **km/h·km/mph·miles**[*1]
Lighting Setup	**Auto High-Beam**	Turns the auto high-beam on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
	Headlight Auto OFF Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
	Headlight Integration With Wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

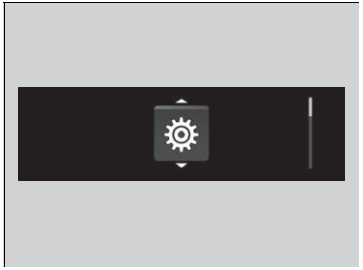
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Door Setup	**Keyless Lock Notification**	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	**90sec/60sec/30sec**[*1]
Maintenance Reset[*]	—	Resets the service reminder display when you have performed the maintenance service.	**Cancel/All Due Items/ Item A Only/Item B Only/ Item 0 Only/Item 1 Only/ Item 2 Only/Item 3 Only/ Item 4 Only/Item 5 Only/ Item 6 Only/Item 7 Only/ Item 8 Only/Item 9 Only**
Default All	—	Cancels customized changes you have made or restores them to their default setting.	**OK/Cancel**

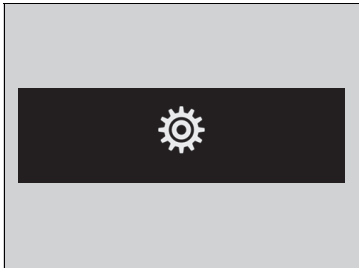
*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ **Example of customization settings**

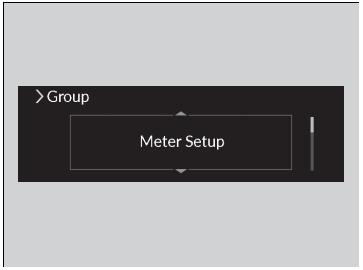
The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**.





1. Press the button, to select , then press the left selector wheel.

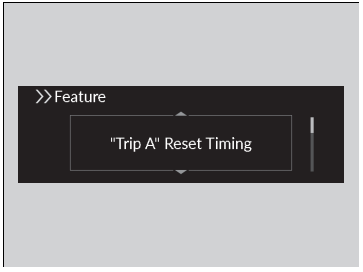
Continued



2. Roll the left selector wheel until **Meter Setup** appears on the display.

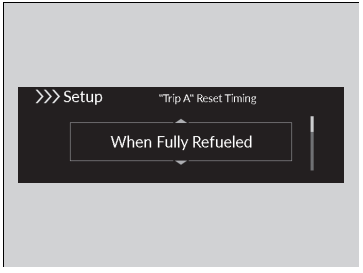
3. Press the left selector wheel.

▶ **Language** appears first in the display.



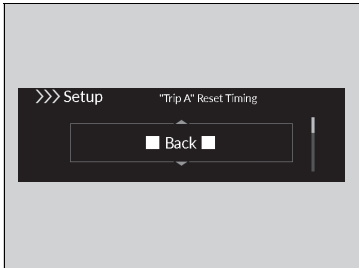
4. Roll the left selector wheel until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.

▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **When Fully Refueled**, **When Ignition Is Turned OFF**, **Manual Reset**, or **Back**.



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **When Fully Refueled**, then press the left selector wheel.

▶ The **When Fully Refueled** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

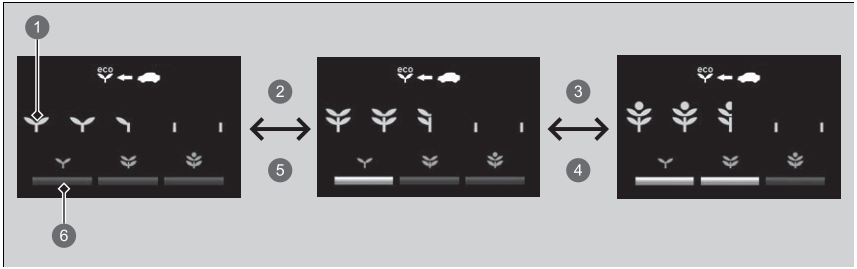


6. Roll the left selector wheel until **Back** appears on the display, then press the left selector wheel.
7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Continued

■ Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

Appear for a few seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Each has three stages. Depending on your driving style, the leaf icon(s) and the gauge increase or decrease to indicate that you have reached a different stage of fuel economy.



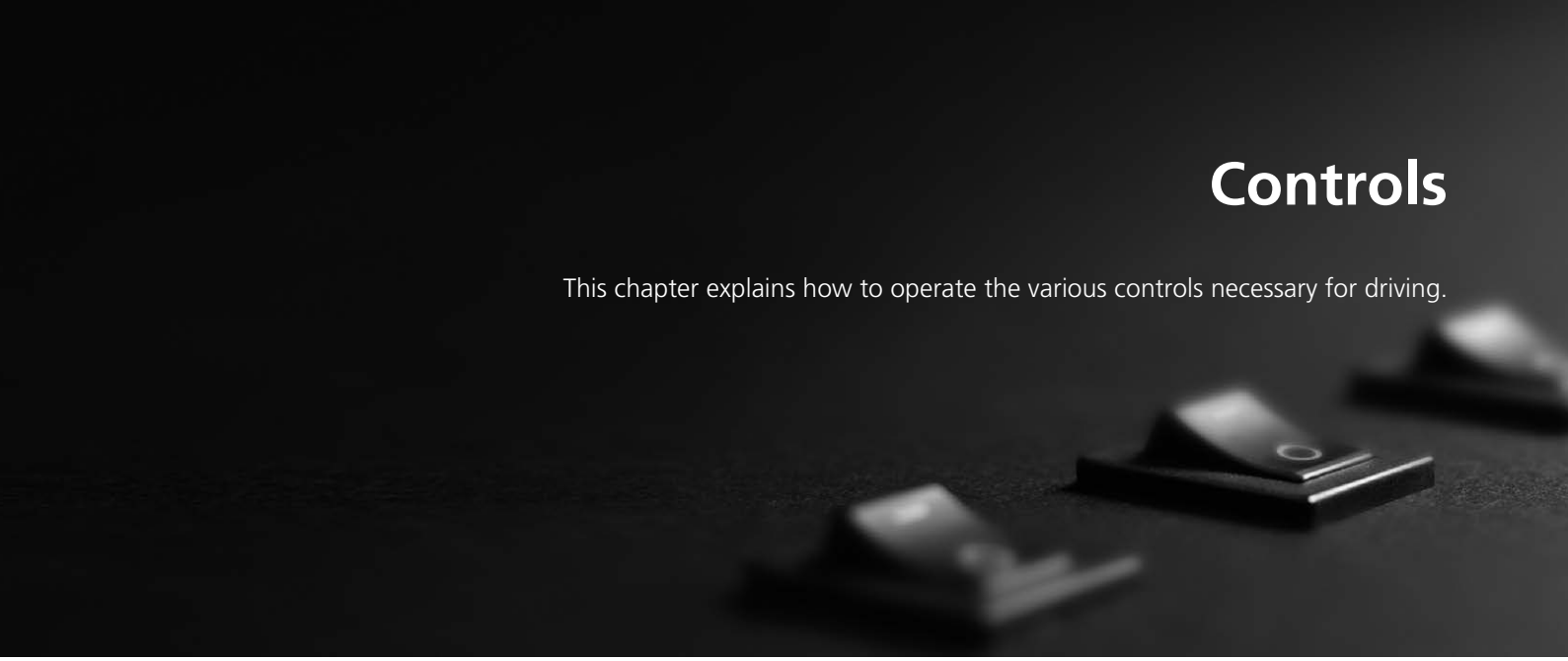
❶ Drive Cycle Score
❷ Advancing to 2nd Stage
❸ Advancing to 3rd Stage
❹ Receding to 2nd Stage
❺ Receding to 1st Stage
❻ Lifetime Points

■ **Resetting the Drive Cycle Score**

1. Make sure the shift position is in P. Turn the power mode to ON.
2. If ECON mode is on, press the **ECON** button to turn it off.
3. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
4. Turn the power mode to ON again.
▶ Make sure to complete steps from 4 through 6 within 30 seconds.
5. Depress the brake pedal twice.
6. Press the **ECON** button twice.
7. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



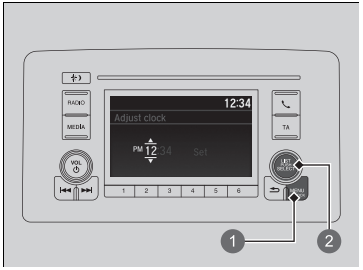
Clock 166
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 167
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 169
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 170
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 176
Childproof Door Locks 178
Tailgate 179
Security System
Immobilizer System 181
Security System Alarm* 182
Super Locking* 183
Opening and Closing the Windows 184
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
POWER Button 188
Lights 191
Headlight Adjuster 198
Auto High-Beam 199
Wipers and Washers 202
Brightness Control 206
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button 205
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 207
Adjusting the Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 208
Power Door Mirrors 209
Adjusting the Seats 211
Interior Convenience Items 222
Climate Control System 233

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

■ Adjusting the Time



❶ **MENU/CLOCK** Button
❷ Selector Knob

Models with colour audio

■ Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
   ▶ **Adjust clock** is selected.
2. Rotate ⟲ to change hour, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to change minute, then press ⊙.
4. To enter the selection, rotate ⟲ and select **Set**, then press ⊙.

Adjusting the Clock

Models with Display Audio

You can adjust the clock and customize the clock display.

➔ **Clock Setup** P. 304

Models with Display Audio

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.

Using the MENU/CLOCK button

Models with colour audio

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate ⟲ to select.
Press ⊙ to enter.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **How to Customize the Settings** P. 265

Key

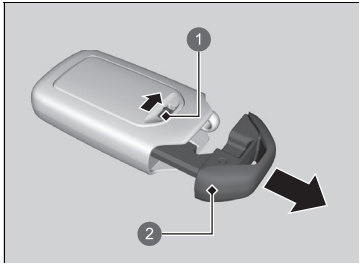
This vehicle comes with the following key:

Keyless Remote



Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and to lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door.

Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

❶ Release Knob
❷ Built-in Key

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 181

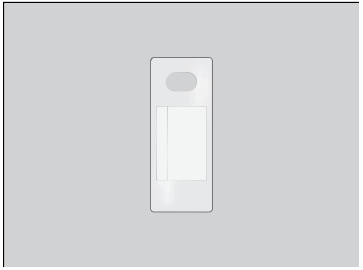
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

Continued

■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking* the doors and tailgate, fuel fill door or to activate the power system.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking* the doors and tailgate, or activating the power system may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

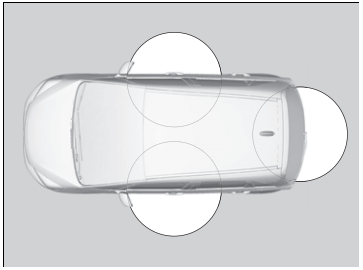
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System*



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door, and tailgate.

You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm (32 inches) of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

➲ **Interior Lights** P. 222

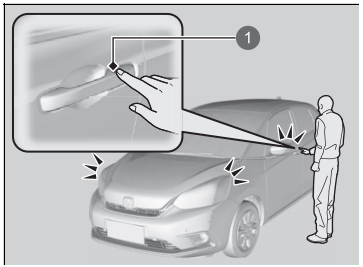
Using the Keyless Access System*

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

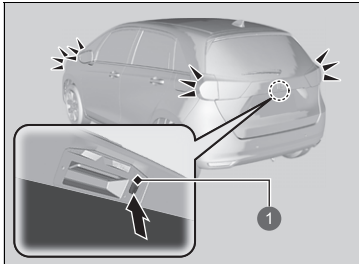
You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

 * Not available on all models

■ Locking the doors and tailgate



❶ Door Lock Sensor



❶ Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.

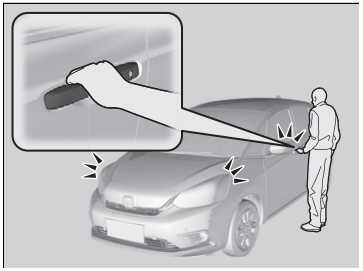
Using the Keyless Access System*

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm (32 inches) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

* Not available on all models

Continued

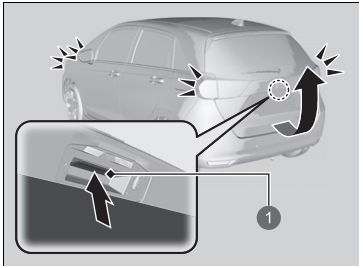
■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate



Grab the front door handle:

▶ All doors, the tailgate, and fuel fill door unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.



Press the outer handle:

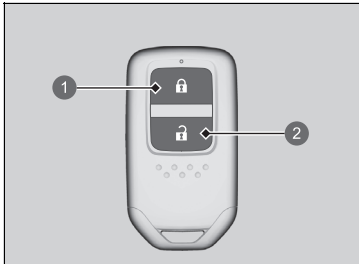
▶ The tailgate unlocks.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 180

❶ Outer Handle

■ Using the Remote Transmitter



❶ Lock Button
❷ Unlock Button

■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors, tailgate lock, and fuel fill door lock, and the security system* sets.

■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors, tailgate, and fuel fill door unlock.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock. You can change the relock timer setting.

Models with colour audio

Settings* P. 154

Models with Display Audio

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 352

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Models with keyless access system with Right-hand Drive Type

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

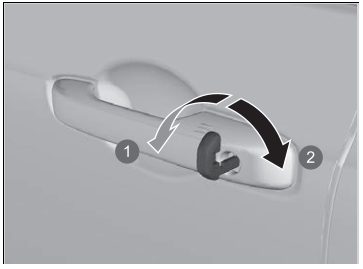
The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

❶ Lock
❷ Unlock

Using the Remote Transmitter

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

➡ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 579

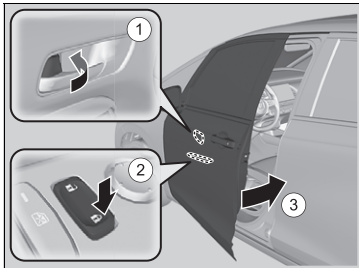
Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

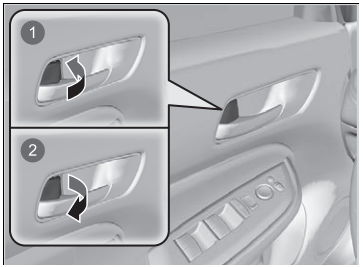
Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



1 To Lock
2 To Unlock

■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

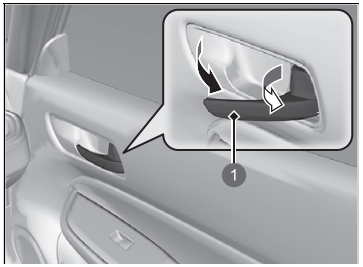
■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

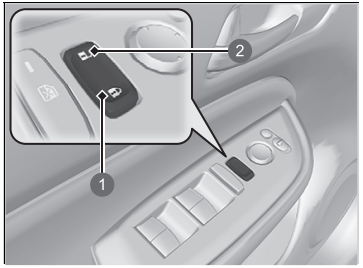
❶ Inner Handle

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.
➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 178

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

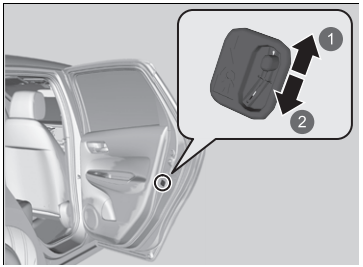
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

1 Unlock
2 Lock

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:
▶ Avoid possible damage.
▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 101

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

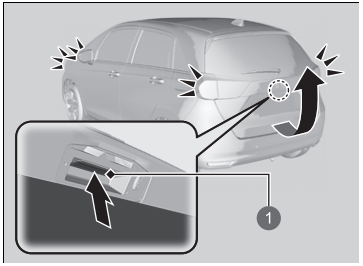
Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

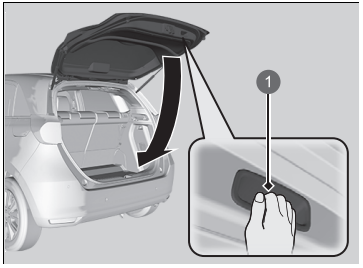


1 Outer Handle

When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

Models with keyless access system

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



1 Inner Handle

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.

Models with keyless access system

- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:
- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Right-hand Drive Type

Apply and hold the brake pedal before set the power mode to ON the first time after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.

Security System Alarm*

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system*.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm*

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

* Not available on all models

Super Locking*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.

Models with keyless access system

- Touch the door lock sensor on the door handle or press the lock button on the tailgate twice within five seconds.

■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system*.

Super Locking*

⚠WARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

* Not available on all models

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Auto-open/close function on all windows

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Closing driver's door cancels this function.

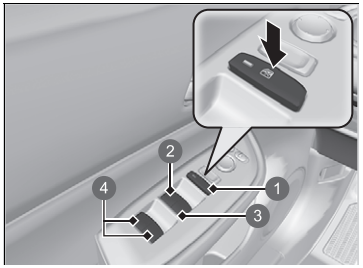
Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



❶ Power Window Lock Button
❷ Driver's Window Switch
❸ Front Passenger's Window Switch*
❹ Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

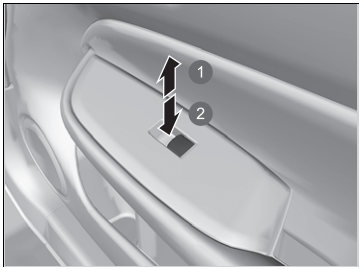
To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*

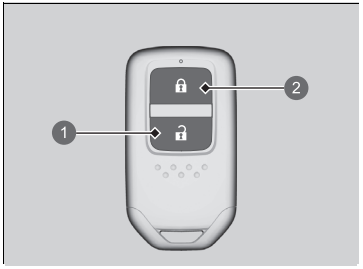


To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

❶ Close
❷ Open

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

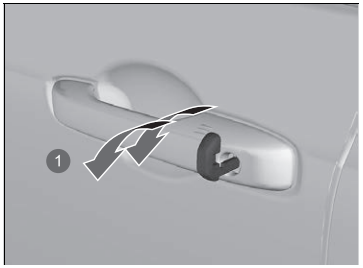
To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

❶ Unlock Button
❷ Lock Button

 * Not available on all models

Closing the Windows with the Key*



To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

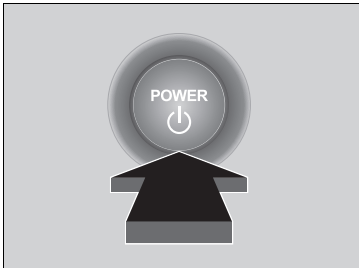
Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

1 Close

* Not available on all models

POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

POWER Button

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **POWER** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than P.

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

When in this mode: The steering wheel does not lock. You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system*. Press the **POWER** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

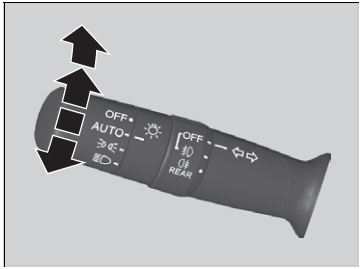
Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Lights

■ Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

■ Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the shift position is in P and the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The shift position is changed out of P and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

Lights On Indicator P. 117

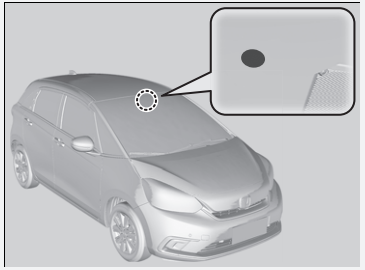
Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear license plate lights will also switch on.

When the light switch is turned to or and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

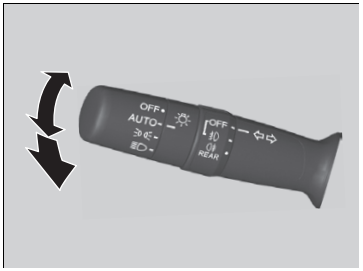
The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover the light sensor.



Continued

■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.

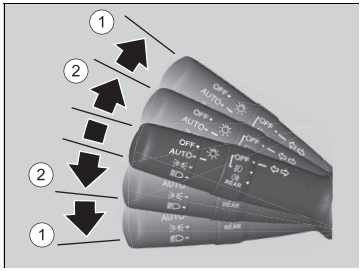


■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

► Release the lever to return to low beams.

Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

Indicators P. 106

Continued

■ Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Models with colour audio

Settings* P. 154

Models with Display Audio

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 352

■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

However, when the switch is in  , the position lights remain on.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

Models with colour audio

Settings* P. 154

Models with Display Audio

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 352

* Not available on all models

Fog Lights

The fog lights can be used when the power mode is in ON.

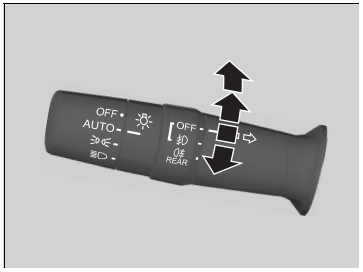
■ Front fog lights*

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

■ Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

■ Front and rear fog light switch*



To turn the front fog lights on:
Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the position. The indicator comes on.

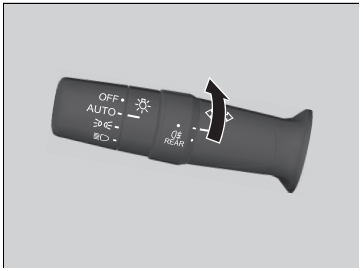
To turn the front and rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position. The and indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch one position up from the position and then rotate the switch one position down from the position. The indicator stays on.
To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Rear fog light switch*



To turn the rear fog lights on:
Rotate the switch to . The indicator comes on.

 * Not available on all models

Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the shift position is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

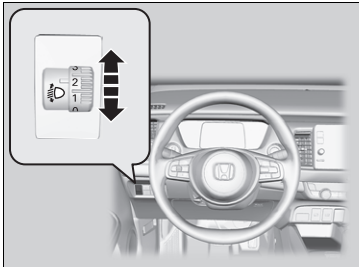
Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

Headlight Adjuster



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the power mode is in ON.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

■ To select the adjusting dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

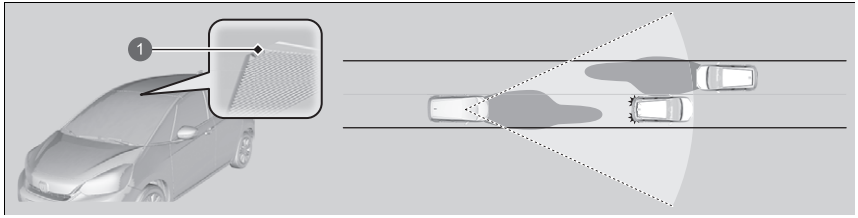
Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

Headlight Adjuster

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN-Regulation No.48 Dover Regulation.

Auto High-Beam

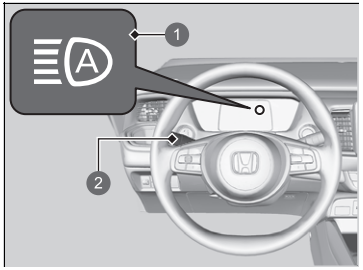
The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.



❶ Front Wide View Camera

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and the auto high-beam is activated.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.
Front Wide View Camera P. 494

For the auto high-beam to work properly:
- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

Continued

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When auto high-beam is active, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

Switching to high beam:		Switching to low beam:
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.		One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h (15 mph) or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has been detected a dense fog.

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it or push the lever forward to the high beam position.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to AUTO and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to AUTO.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Auto High-Beam

You can change the auto high-beam system on and off.

Models with colour audio

Settings* P. 154

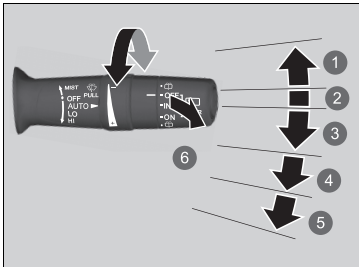
Models with Display Audio

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings P. 352

* Not available on all models

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



❶ **MIST**
❷ **OFF**
❸ **AUTO**
❹ **LO**: Low speed wipe
❺ **HI**: High speed wipe
❻ **Washer**

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

NOTICE

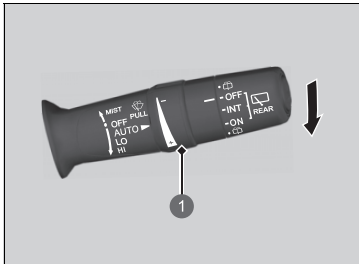
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers



1 Adjustment Ring

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity

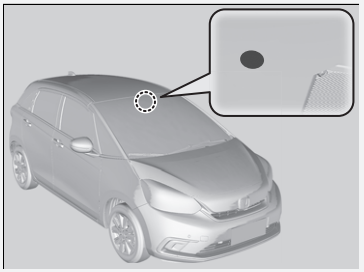


Low Sensitivity

High Sensitivity

Automatic Intermittent Wipers

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



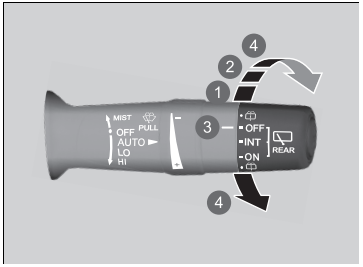
NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Continued

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ INT: Intermittent
❷ ON: Continuous wipe
❸ OFF
❹ Washer

The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

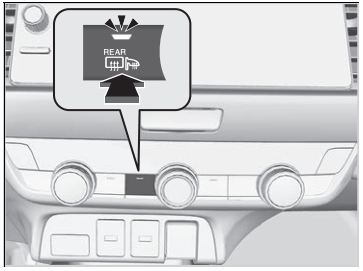
■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)
Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )
Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

■ Operating in reverse
When you shift the transmission to R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
AUTO (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) **HI** (High speed wipe)	Continuous

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button



Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

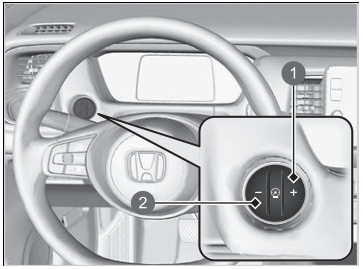
The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

Brightness Control



❶ + Button
❷ − Button

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

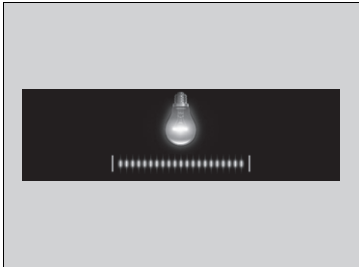
■ Adjusting the brightness manually

You can use the + or − button to adjust instrument panel brightness.

Brighten: Press the + button.

Dim: Press the − button.

▶ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.



■ Brightness level indicator

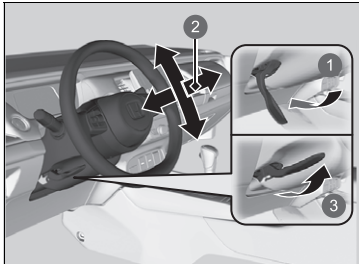
The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is lower left side of the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

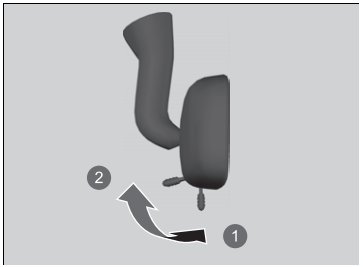
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions



Flip the tab to switch the position.
The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

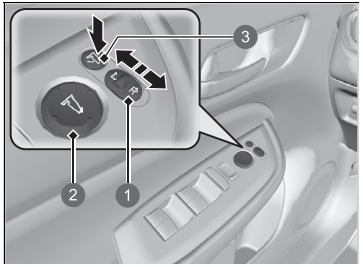
1 Night Position
2 Daytime Position

Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
Front Seats P. 211

Power Door Mirrors



❶ Selector Switch
❷ Adjustment Switch
❸ Folding Button*

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ **Mirror position adjustment**

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ **Folding door mirrors***

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or touch the door lock button* on any door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the keyless remote or keyless access system*. Open the driver's door.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Models with Display Audio

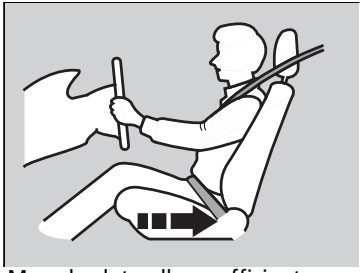
You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings
P. 352

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

* Not available on all models

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seats

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

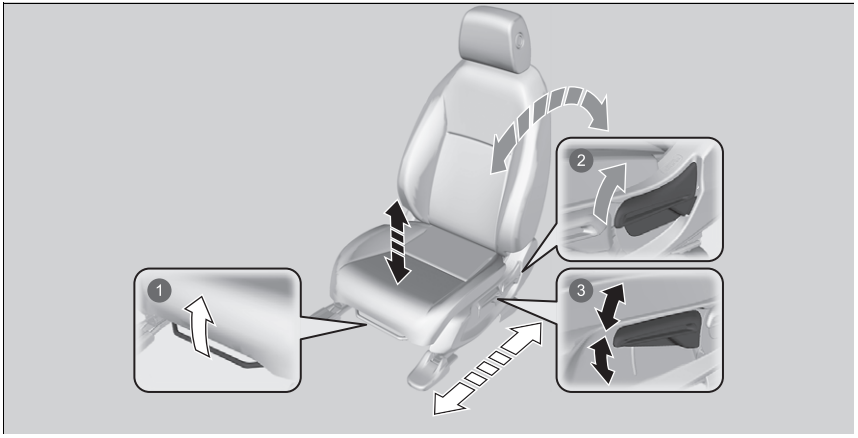
In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Continued

■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

■ Adjusting the front manual seat



❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

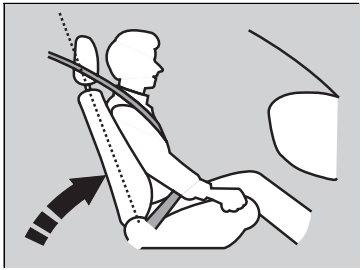
❷ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

❸ **Height Adjustment (Driver side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

Adjusting the front manual seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

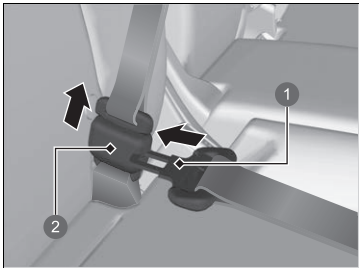
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

Folding Down the Rear Seats



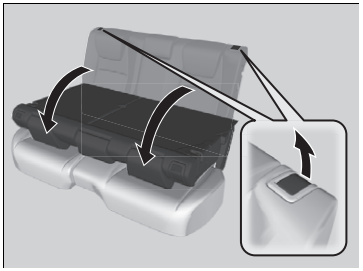
1. Latch Plate
2. Anchor Buckle

1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.

2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.

➡ **Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor** P. 51

3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position.



4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠WARNING

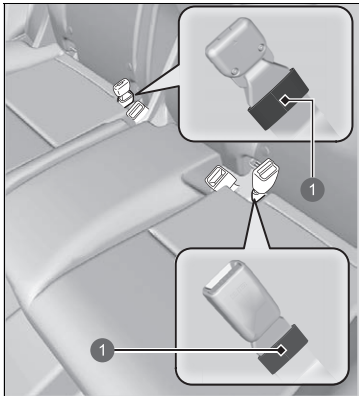
Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

■ Folding Up the Rear Seat

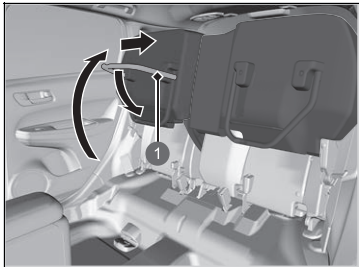


❶ Loop

Separately lift up the left and right rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.

■ Lifting up the seat cushion

1. Make sure the seat belt buckles are in their loops on the seat.



❶ Seat Leg

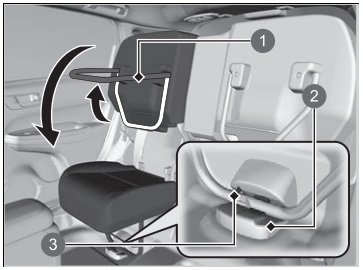
2. Pull up the rear seat cushion.
3. Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

Folding Up the Rear Seat

After you fold the seat up, or put it back in the original position, make sure the seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back.

Check if there are any items on the seat before you pull the seat cushion up. Check if there are any obstacles around the floor guide before you put the seat back in the original position.

Continued



❶ Seat Leg
❷ Floor Guide
❸ Latch

■ **Putting the seat in the original position**

1. Hold the seat cushion in the upright position, and pull up the seat leg fully.
▶ The seat cushion can abruptly fall down once you pull up the seat leg.

2. Slowly put down the seat cushion and set the seat leg in the floor guide.
▶ A latch comes out when the leg is set properly.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power mode is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

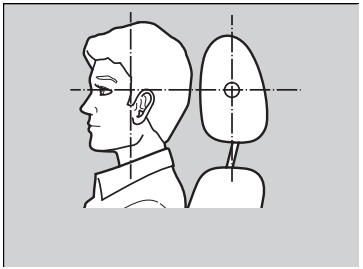
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

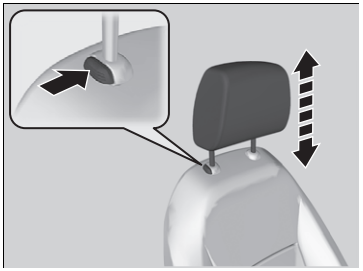
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Position head in the centre of the head restraint.

Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

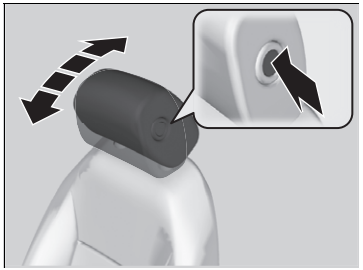
⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

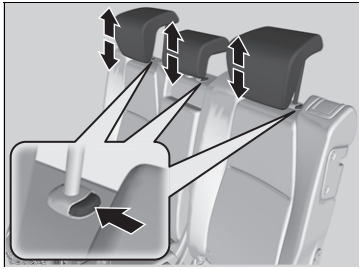
In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.



To tilt the head restraint forward:
Push the back of it forward.
To tilt the head restraint backward:
Push it backward while pressing the release button on the side of the head restraint.

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the rear seat seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.
To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the rear seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



Continued

■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

⚠WARNING

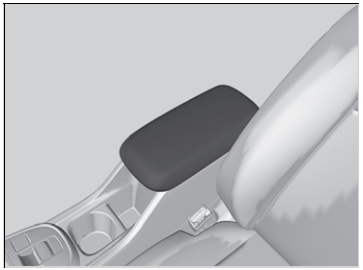
Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

To remove and install the rear head restraint, recline the seat-back slightly forward as the space between the ceiling and the seat-back is limited.

Armrest

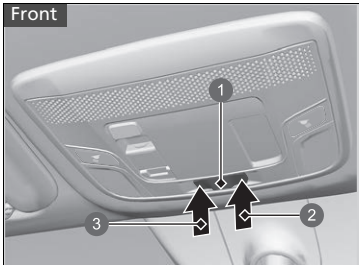
Using the Front Seat Armrest



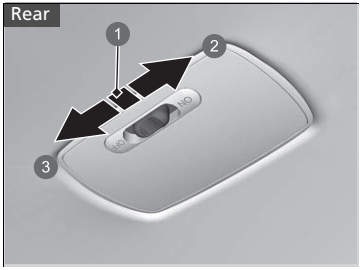
The console lid can be used as an armrest.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches



1 Door Activated Position
2 On
3 Off



1 Door Activated Position
2 On
3 Off

■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with colour audio

➡ **Settings*** P. 154

Models with Display Audio

➡ **How to Customize the Vehicle Settings** P. 352

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

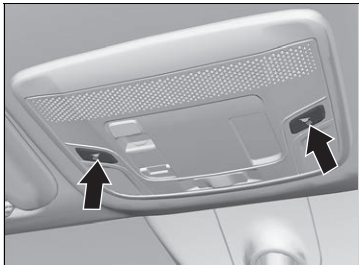
- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

* Not available on all models

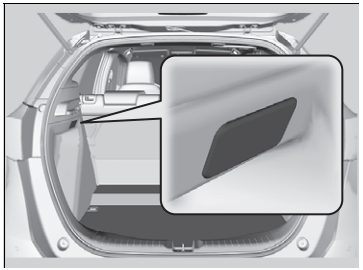
■ Map Lights



■ Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.

■ Luggage Area Lights



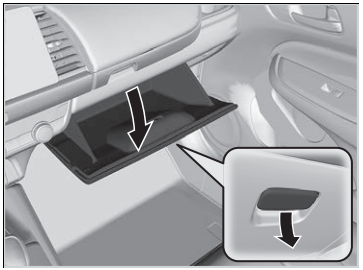
The lights come on when you open the tailgate.

Map Lights

When the front interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the buttons.

Storage Items

■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

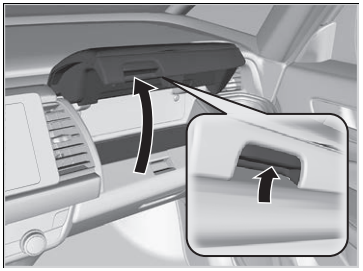
Glove Box

⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

■ Upper Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the upper glove box.

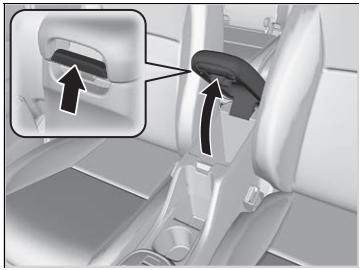
Upper Glove Box

⚠WARNING

An open upper glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the upper glove boxes closed while driving.

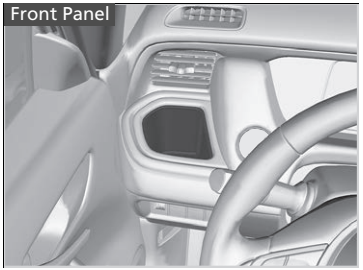
Console Box



Pull the handle to open the console box.

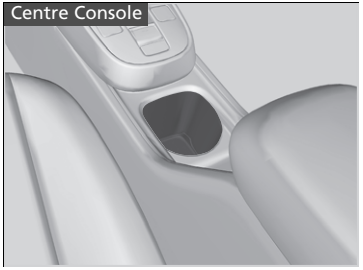
Continued

■ Beverage Holders

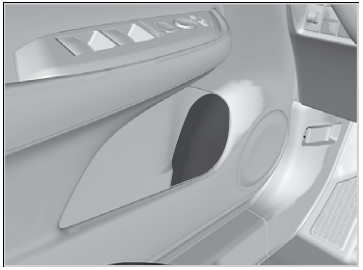


■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located on the both of the front panel.



Are located in the console between the front seats.



■ Front door side beverage holders

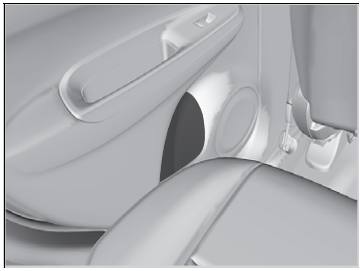
Are located on the both of front door side pockets.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

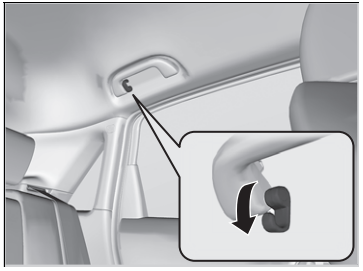
Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ **Rear door side beverage holders**
Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

■ Coat Hook



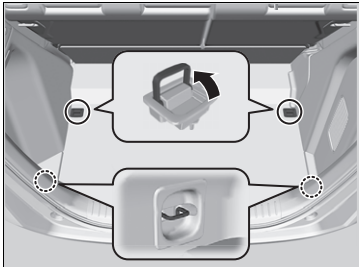
There are coat hooks on the rear driver's side grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

Coat Hook

The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.

Continued

■ Tie-down Anchors

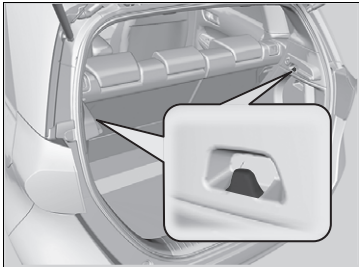


The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

■ Luggage Hook



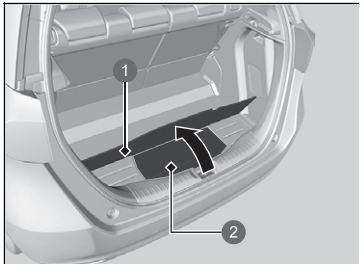
The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg (6 lbs) on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Luggage Floor Box



Pull up the luggage area lower floor lid.

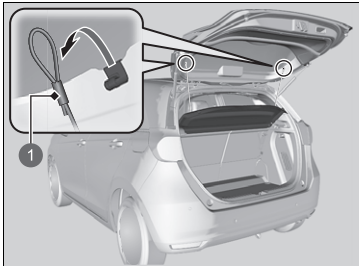
❶ Floor Lid
❷ Luggage Floor Box

Continued

■ Luggage Area Cover

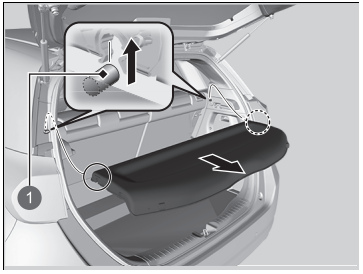
The luggage area cover can be removed to give you more luggage room.

■ To remove the luggage area cover



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the strap on each side of the tailgate.

❶ Strap



3. Disengage the support rods, then remove the luggage area cover.

Reverse this procedure to install the luggage area cover.

After reinstalling the luggage area cover, make sure it is latched securely.

❶ Support Rod

Luggage Area Cover

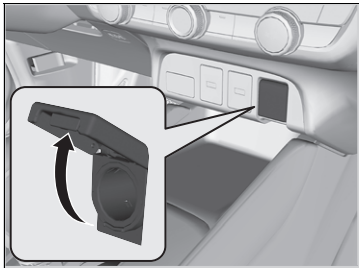
Do not place items on the luggage area cover, or stack objects higher than the top of the back seat. They could block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crush or sudden stop.

Do not apply excessive pressure to the cover, such as leaning on it to retrieve an item.

Other Interior Convenience Items

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

NOTICE

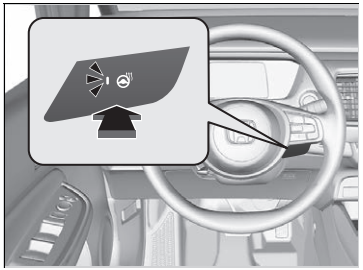
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the power socket with the power system on.

When the power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the power socket.

■ Heated Steering Wheel*



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Heated Steering Wheel*

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

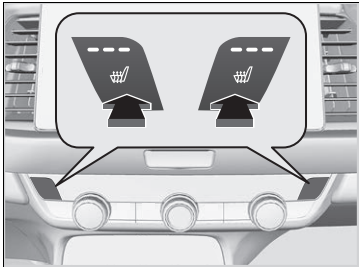
* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.



Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is in ON after it is turned off, the previous setting of seat heaters is maintained.

Front Seat Heaters*

⚠WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

 * Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

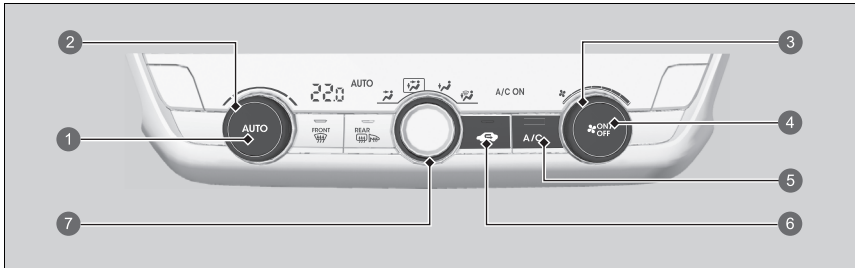
The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (on/off) button to cancel.



❶ **AUTO** Button*1
❷ Temperature Control Dial*1
❸ Fan Control Dial*1
❹ **ON/OFF** Button*1
❺ **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button*1
❻ Recirculation Button*1
❼ MODE Control Dial
- Air flows from dashboard vents
- Air flows from dashboard and floor vents
- Air flows from floor vents
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents

*1:Left-hand drive types shown. For the right-hand drive types, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive type.

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

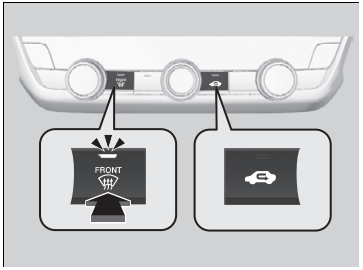
The High Voltage battery level being low may reduce the climate control system performance.

Continued

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

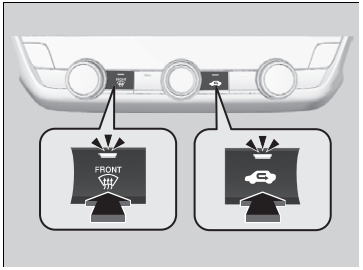
■ Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows



Pressing the (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows



1. Press the button (indicator on).
2. Press the button (indicator on).

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

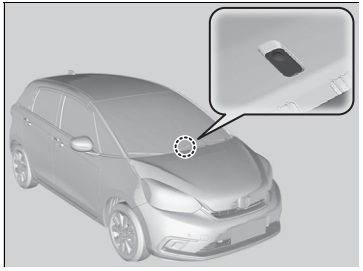
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

To rapidly defrost the windows

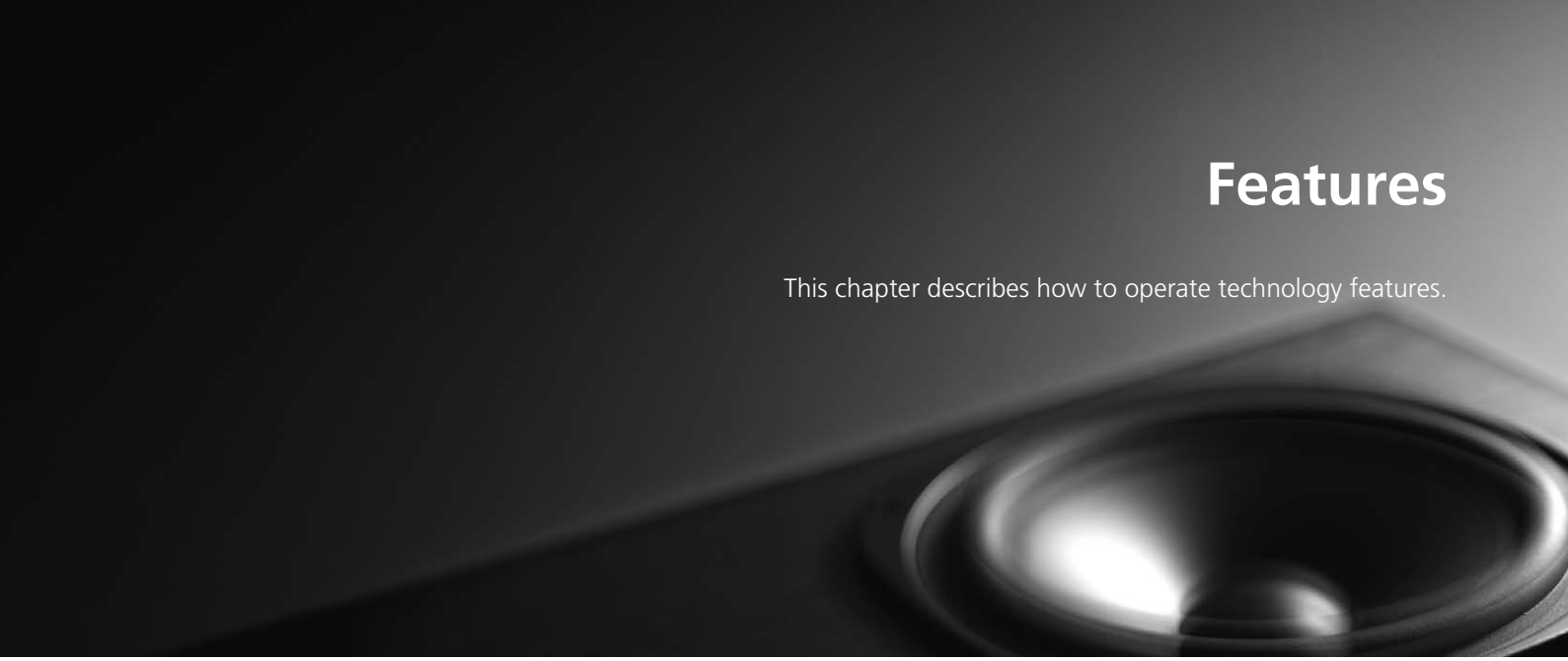
After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors





The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

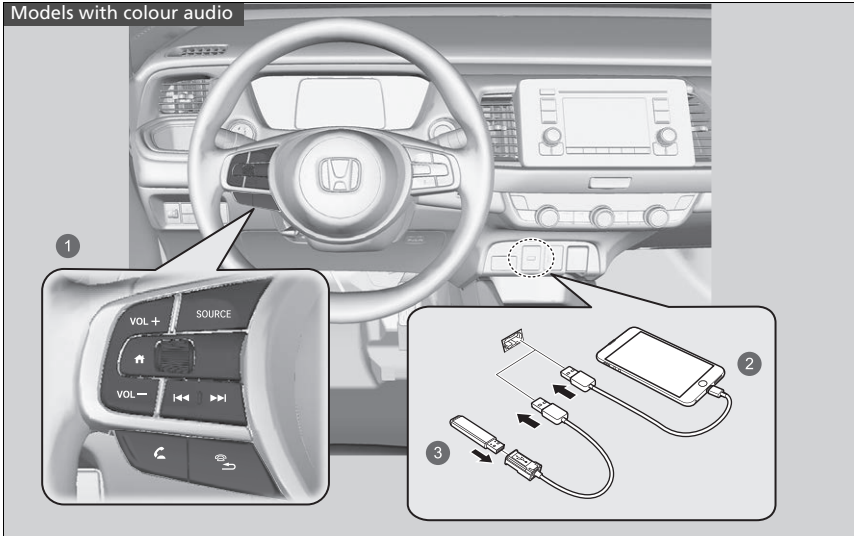
Audio System..... 238
Colour Audio..... 241
Display Audio 285
Audio Error Messages..... 377
General Information on the Audio System..... 379
Emergency Call (eCall)..... 386

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface*.

Models with colour audio



1 Remote Controls
2 iPod
3 USB Flash Drive

About Your Audio System

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

* Not available on all models



❶ Remote Controls
❷ iPod
❸ USB Flash Drive

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

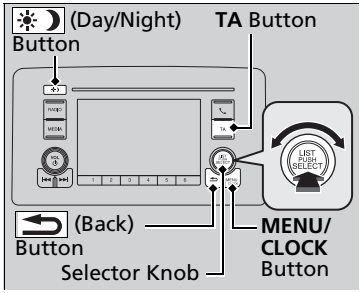
■ Reactivating the audio system

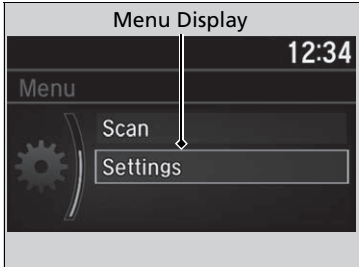
1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Basic Operation

Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.





Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.
The available modes include wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.

TA button: Press to activate the TA station.

(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press the button, then adjust the brightness using .

▶ Each time you press the button, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Colour Audio

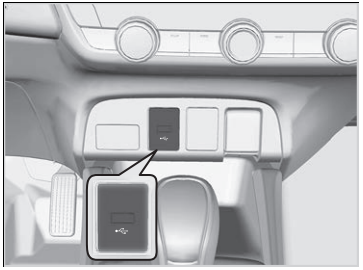
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

Menu Items
- **Adjust Clock** P. 166
- **Wallpaper Setup** P. 246
- **Adjusting the Sound** P. 248
- **Display Setup** P. 249
- **Customized Features** P. 265

Press the button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.
- **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

Continued

■ USB Port



The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging devices.

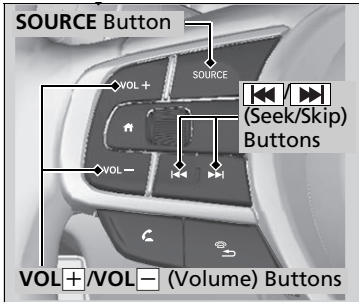
USB Port

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

■ Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:
FM1→FM2→DAB1→DAB2→LW→AM (MW)→USB/iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio

VOL+/VOL− (Volume) Buttons

Press VOL+: To increase the volume.
Press VOL−: To decrease the volume.

⏮/⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ⏭: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ⏮: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ⏭: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ⏮: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press ⏭: To skip to the next song.
  Press ⏮: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  Press and hold ⏭: To skip to the next folder/group.
  Press and hold ⏮: To go back to the previous folder/group.

Audio Remote Controls

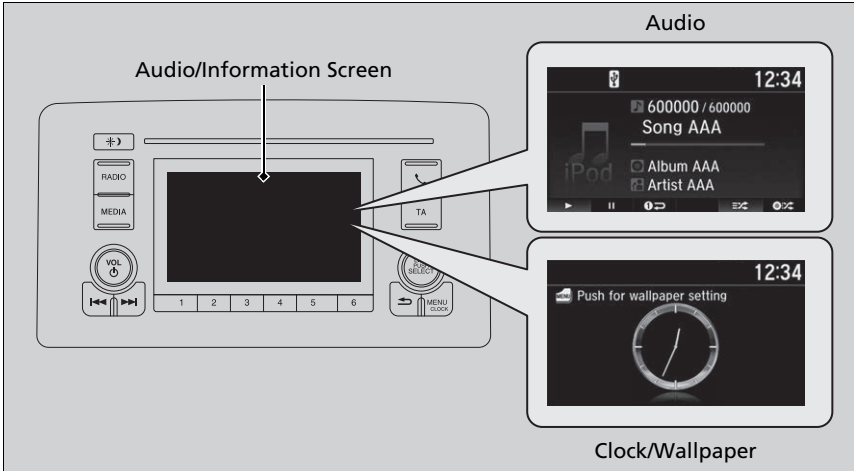
Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

■ Switching the Display



■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

■ **Change display**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

Continued

■ Wallpaper Setup



You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
➡ **USB Port** P. 242
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select **Settings**, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select **Wallpaper**, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select **Import**, then press ⊙.
▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate ⟲ to select a desired picture, then press ⊙.
▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press ⊙ to save the picture.
8. Press ⊙ to select **OK**.
9. Rotate ⟲ to select a location to save the picture, then press ⊙.
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 510 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 × 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, a message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

■ **Select wallpaper**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Select**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

■ **To view wallpaper once it is set**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Press the (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

■ **Delete wallpaper**

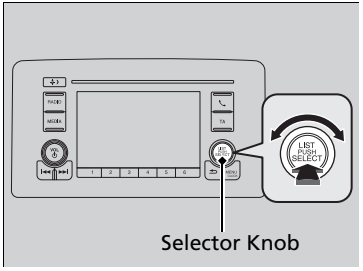
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete**, then press .
▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

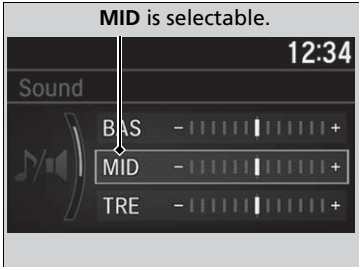
Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound





Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button and rotate to select **Sound**, then press . Rotate to scroll through the following choices:

- **BAS** — Bass
- **MID** — Middle
- **TRE** — Treble
- **FAD** — Fader
- **BAL** — Balance
- **SVC** — Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation

Rotate to adjust the sound setting, then press .

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Display adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate to adjust the setting, then press .

Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

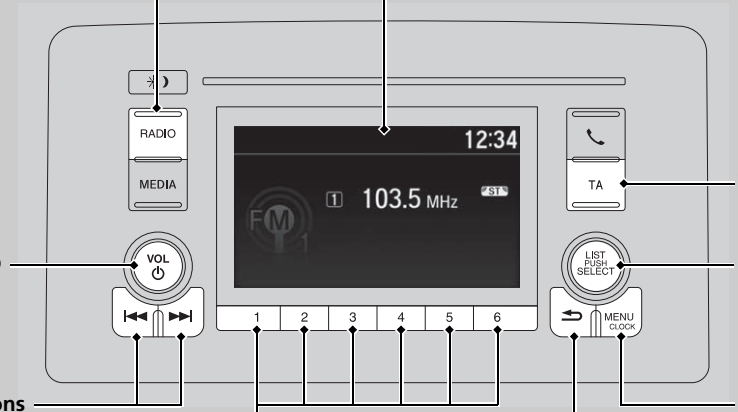


1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Colour theme**, then press .
4. Rotate to select the setting you want, then press .

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

Playing AM/FM Radio



RADIO Button
Press to select a band.

Audio/Information Screen

TA Button

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the radio frequency.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search up and down the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

⮌ (Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select the station, then press ⏻.

■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press ⏻ while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Update list**, then press ⏻.

■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Settings**, then press ⏻.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **RDS settings**, then press ⏻.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select **Radio text**, then press ⏻.

■ Alternative Frequency (AF)

Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ⟳ to select **Settings**, then press ⏻.
3. Rotate ⟳ to select **RDS settings**, then press ⏻.
4. Rotate ⟳ to select **AF**, then press ⏻.

Continued

Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

■ Regional Programme (REG)

Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **REG**, then press .

■ News

Automatically tunes to the news programme.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **News**, then press .

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

■ Traffic announcement (TA) button

TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic programme station.

To turn the function on: Press the **TA** button. When a traffic announcement begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode. TA-INFO appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, press the **TA** button again.

To cancel the function: Press the **TA** button.

Radio Data System (RDS)

TA

When you press the **TA** button, the **TA** indicator appears on the audio/information screen.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Pressing the **TA** button while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



Audio/Information Screen

The DAB signal strength indicator appears on the display when the DAB band is selected.

RADIO Button
Press to select a band.

VOL/⏻ (Volume/Power) Knob
Press to turn the audio system on and off.
Turn to adjust the volume.

Selector Knob
Turn to tune the service.
Press, and then turn to select an item. After that, press again to make your selection.

MENU/CLOCK Button
Press to display the menu items.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
Press |◀◀ or ▶▶| to tune a DAB ensemble.

(Back) Button
Press to go back to the previous display or cancel a setting.

Preset Buttons (1-6)
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Pick a preset button and hold it until you hear a beep.

To listen to a stored station, select a band, then press the preset button.

■ Service List and Ensemble List

■ To find a DAB station from Service List or Ensemble List

To find a DAB station from the service list:

1. Press ⏻ while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate ↶ to select the station, then press ⏻.
▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the station list.

To find a DAB station from the ensemble list:

1. Press ⏻ while selecting the DAB mode.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Ensemble list**, then press ⏻.
3. Rotate ↶ to select the ensemble, then press ⏻.
▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the ensemble list.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Scan**, then press ⏻.

To turn off scan, press ⏻.

■ Radio Text:

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate ↶ to select **Settings**, then press ⏻.
3. Rotate ↶ to select **DAB settings**, then press ⏻.
4. Rotate ↶ to select **Radio text**, then press ⏻.
▶ Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.

Service List and Ensemble List

You can store 12 DAB stations into the preset button memory. DAB1 and DAB2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode
Press the audio source selecting button on the steering wheel.
➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 243

If the system cannot find a station, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate ↶ to select **Yes**, then press ⏻ to update the list.

Radio Text:

The **TEXT** indicator appears on the display indicating radio text information.

Continued

■ **DAB-Link:**

Automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **DAB-Link**, then press .
▶ Select **DAB-Link** again to turn it off.

■ **FM-Link:**

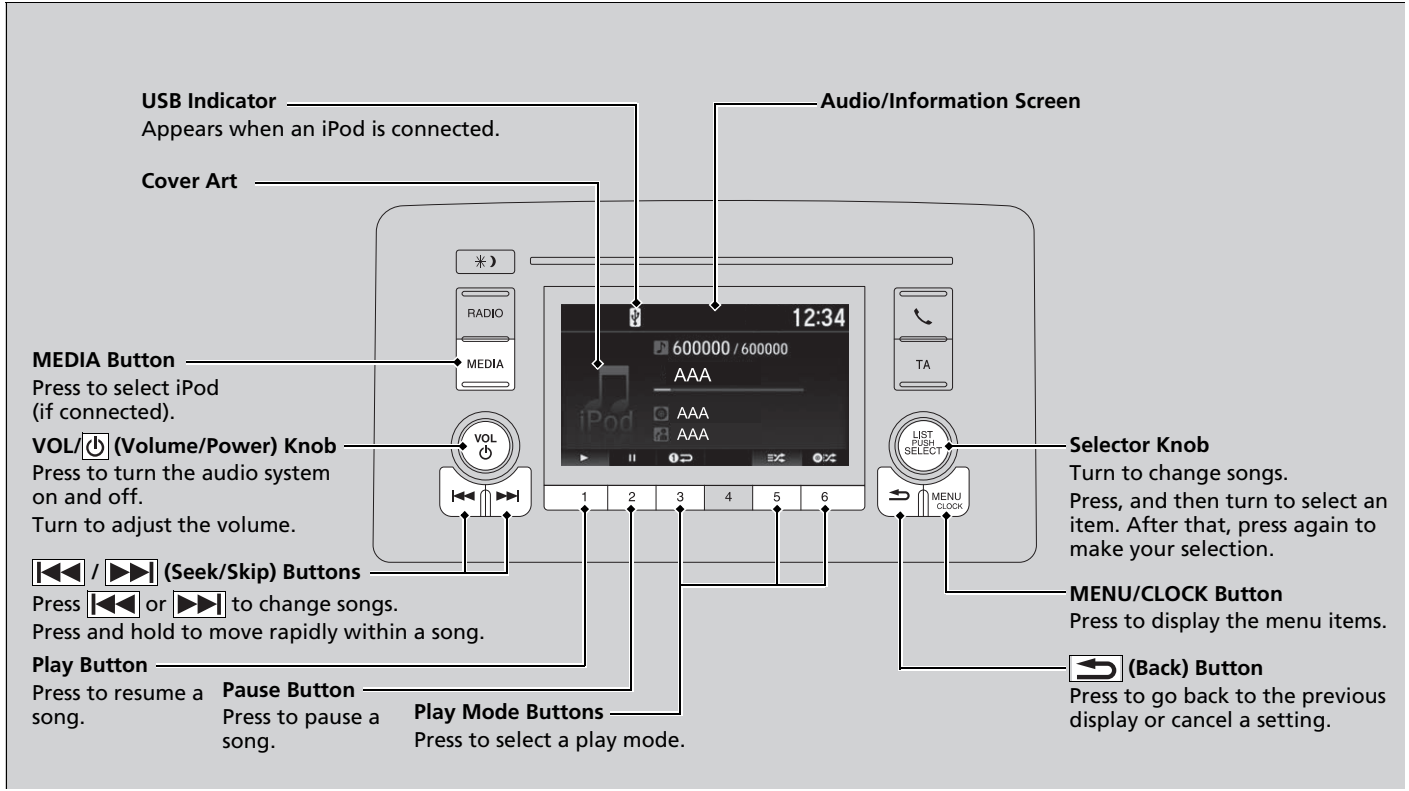
If the system finds the same station from an FM band, it automatically switches the band.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **DAB settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **FM-Link**, then press .
▶ Select **FM-Link** again to turn it off.

Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Port P. 242



Continued

How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob

1. Press to display the iPod music list.
2. Rotate to select a category.
3. Press to display a list of items in the category.
4. Rotate to select an item, then press .
▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

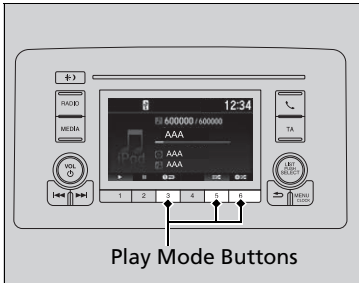
Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 377

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.
Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

Shuffle/Repeat

Shuffle albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category in random order.
Shuffle all: Plays all available songs in a selected category in random order.
Repeat one track: Repeats the current song.

To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

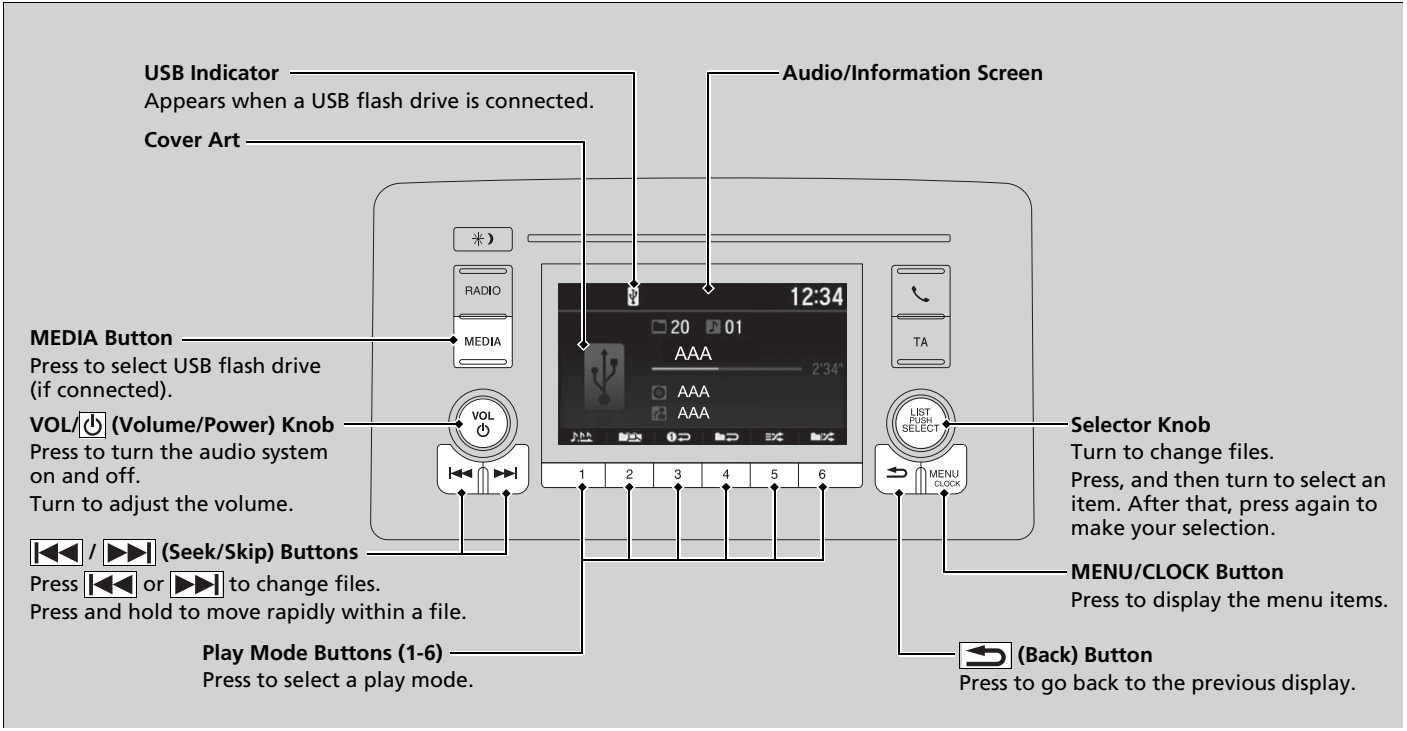
You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .
Rotate to select a mode, then press .
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC*1 or WAV format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

USB Port P. 242



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob

1. Press to display a folder list.
2. Rotate to select a folder.
3. Press to display a list of files in that folder.
4. Rotate to select a file, then press .

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.
➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 379

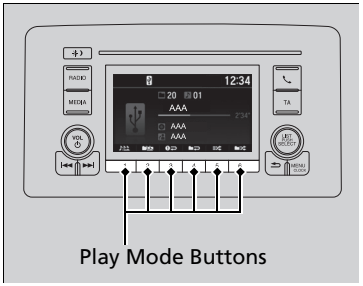
Files in WMA and AAC format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.
➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 377

Continued

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.
Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

■ Repeat/Random/Scan

Repeat

Repeat one folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.
Repeat one track: Repeats the current file.

Random

Random in folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.
Random all: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.
Scan tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

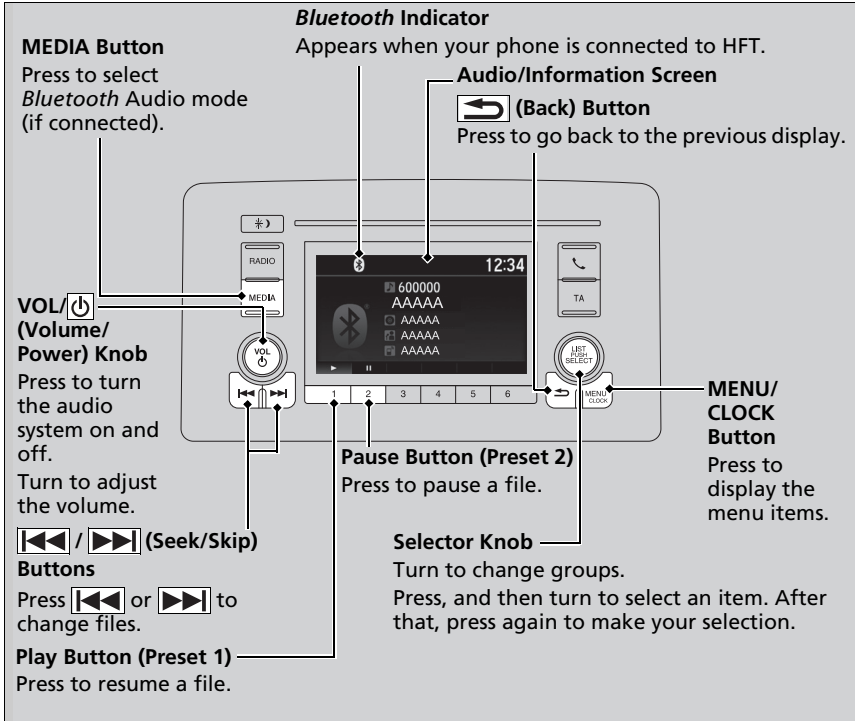
You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .
Rotate to select a mode, then press .
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 275



Continued

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in **Priority device setup**.

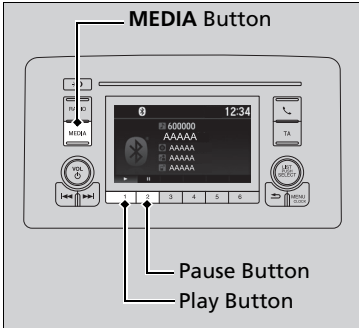
Customized Features P. 265

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ To pause or resume a file
Press the **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

1. Press ⟲ to display the music search list.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select a category.
3. Press ⟲ to display a list of items in the category.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select an item, then press ⟲.
▶ Press ⟲ and rotate ⟲ repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

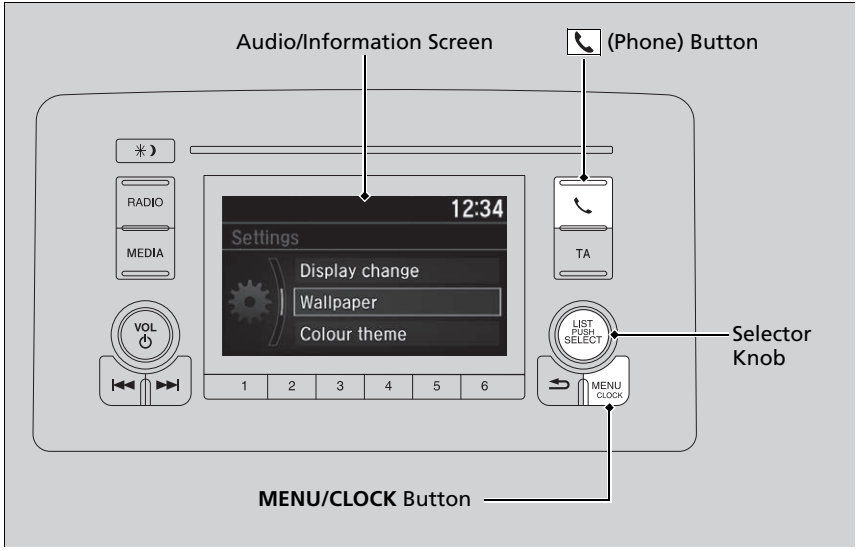
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to Customize the Settings

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Adjust clock**, **Sound** or **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the [ ] button, then select **Phone setup**.



Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to [P].

How to Customize the Settings

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.
Rotate to select.
Press to enter.

Continued

■ **Adjust clock**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust clock	Adjusts the clock. ➔ **Clock** P. 166	—

■ **Sound**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Sound	Adjusts the sound. ➔ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 248	**BAS/MID/TRE/FAD/BAL/SVC**

■ **Settings**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
RDS settings	**Radio text**	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.	On/Off*1
	AF	Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different region.	On*1/Off
	REG	Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On*1/Off
	News	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off*1
DAB settings	**Radio text**	Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.	On/Off*1
	DAB-Link	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	On*1/Off
	FM-Link	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	On*1/Off

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth setup	**Add new device**	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. **Phone Setup** P. 275	—
	Connect an audio device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFT.	—
Display adjustment	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
	Black level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Display change		Changes the display type.	**Audio***1**/Wallpaper**
Wallpaper	**Select**	Changes the wallpaper type.	**Clock***1**/Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3**
	Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. **Wallpaper Setup** P. 246	—
	Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	**Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3**
Colour theme		Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	**Blue***1**/Red/Amber/Violet/ Blue green**
Language		Changes the display language.	**English***1 or **Turkish***1 See other selectable languages on the screen.
Clock format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	**12h***1**/24h**
License		Shows the legal information.	—

*1:Default Setting

Continued

■ **Phone setup**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Bluetooth setup	**Add new device**		Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 275	—
	Priority device setup	**Priority**	Enables the system to or disables it from automatically establishing a connection with a *Bluetooth*® device which has been assigned priority.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
		Phone priority	Selects the priority device over another paired phone(s).	—
		Audio priority	Selects the priority device over another paired audio device(s).	—
	Connect a phone		Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 275	—
	Connect an audio device		Connects a *Bluetooth*® Audio device to HFT.	—
	Disconnect all devices		Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	Delete device		Deletes a paired phone.	—
Speed dial			Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ➡ **Speed Dial** P. 280	—
Ringtone			Selects the ring tone.	**Mobile phone**[*1]**/Fixed**
Caller ID info			Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	**Name priority**[*1]**/Number priority**
Auto transfer			Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.	**On**[*1]**/Off**
System clear			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the **Phone setup** group as default.	—

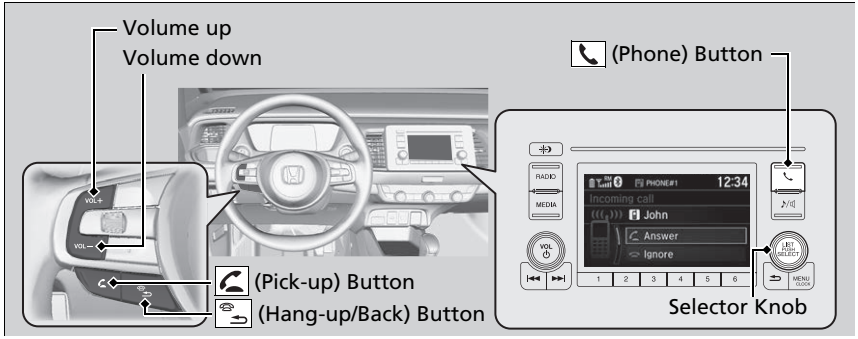
*1:Default Setting

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call.

(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen.

Selector knob: Rotate to select an item on the screen, then press .

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

Speed Dial P. 280

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

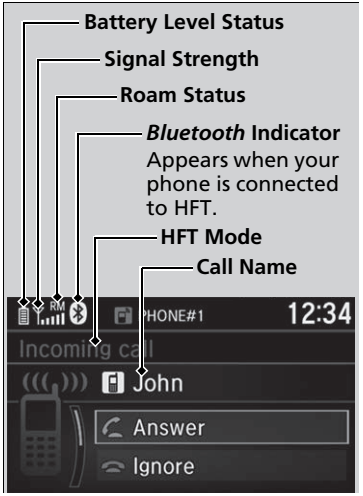
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

Continued

■ HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

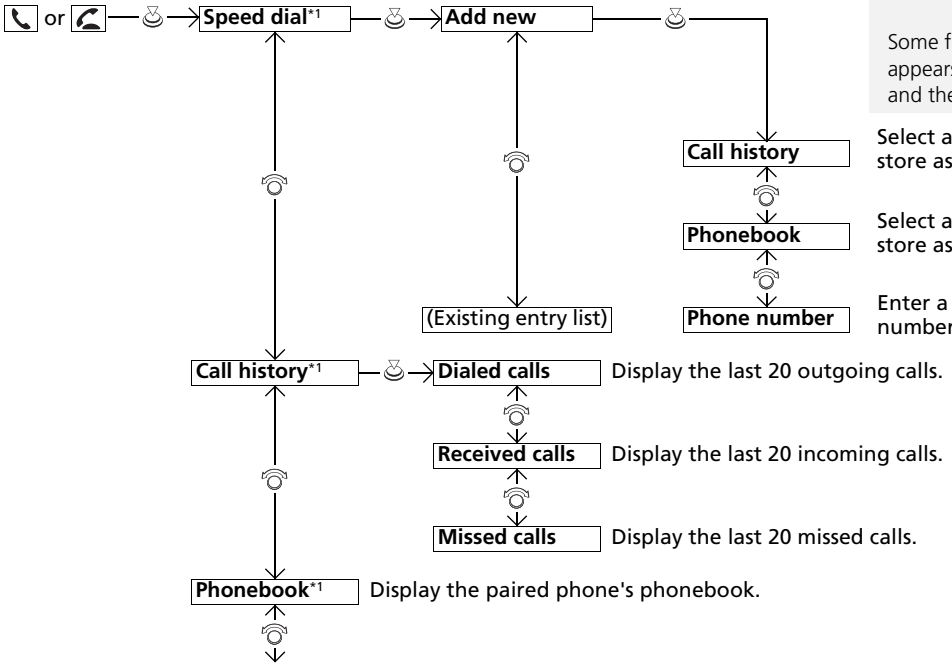
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

HFT Menus

To use the system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

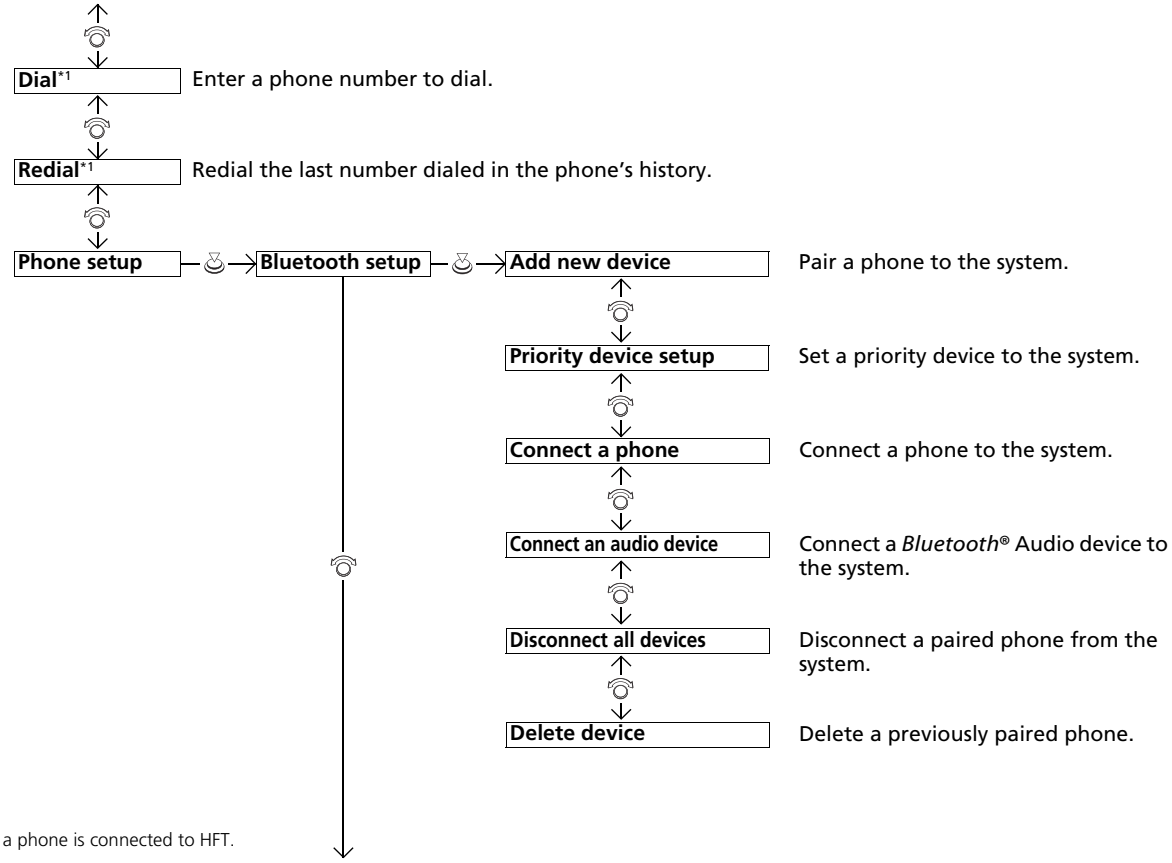
HFT Menus

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

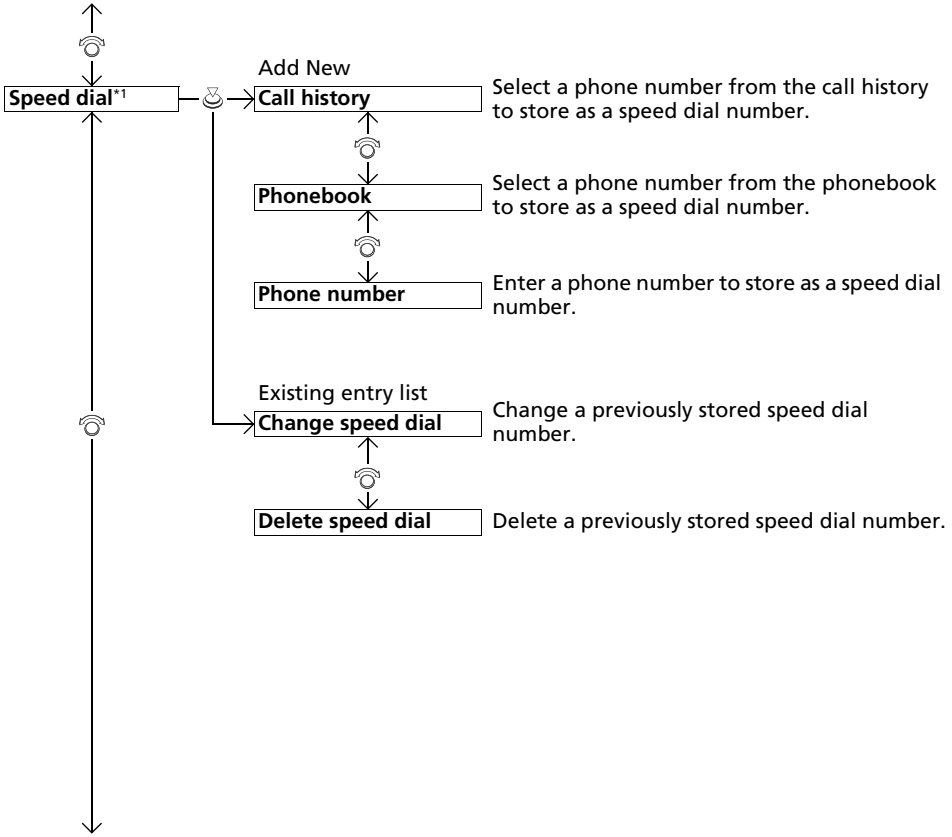
Some functions are limited while driving. A message appears on the screen when the vehicle is moving and the operation is cancelled.

*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.

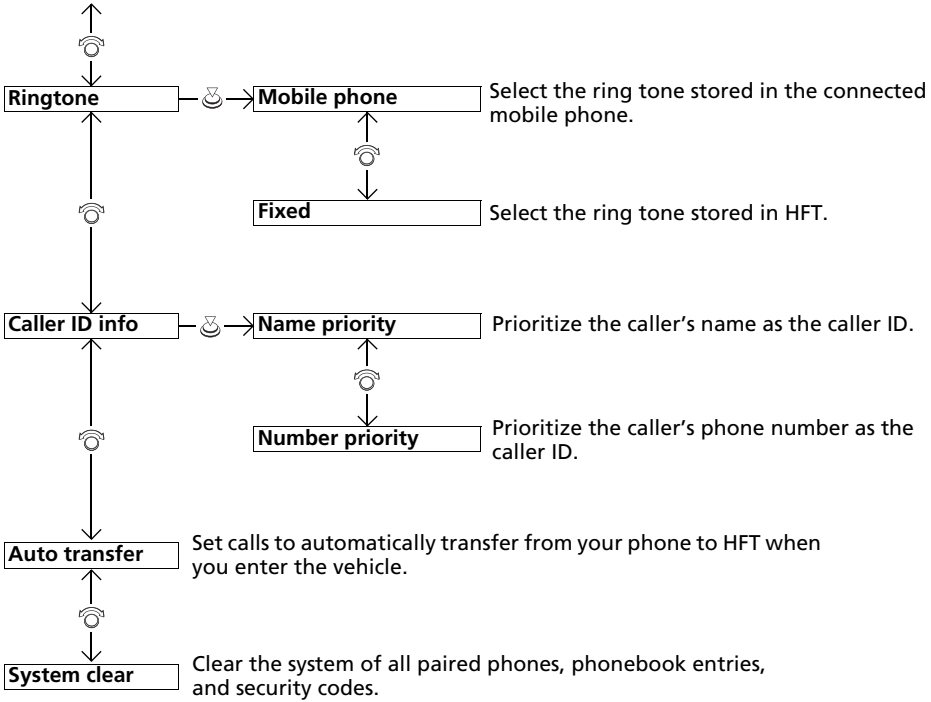
Continued



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.

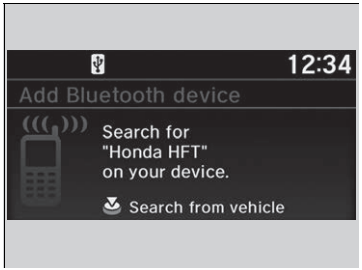


*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.


Ringtone
Mobile phone
Select the ring tone stored in the connected mobile phone.
Fixed
Select the ring tone stored in HFT.
Caller ID info
Name priority
Prioritize the caller's name as the caller ID.
Number priority
Prioritize the caller's phone number as the caller ID.
Auto transfer
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.
System clear
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries, and security codes.

Phone Setup

To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
3. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
   ▶ The audio system will enter a waiting mode for pairing.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, press and follow the prompts.
   When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready to be paired or is not paired within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.
These icons indicate the following:
: The phone can be used with HFT.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

When pairing a phone from this audio system:
If your phone doesn't appear on the audio/information screen, select **Refresh** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.
From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.

Continued

■ **To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)**



1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new device**, then press .
4. Press to select **OK**.
▶ The screen changes to device list.
5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
6. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Refresh** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
7. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by a phone.

■ **To change the currently paired phone**



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Connect a phone**, then press .
   ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a desired device name, then press .
   ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.

■ **To delete a paired phone**



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete device**, then press .
   ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

Continued

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Mobile phone** or **Fixed**, then press .

■ Caller ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

■ Automatic Transferring

If pairing between your phone and the system is executed while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Auto transfer**.
4. Press to select **On** or **Off**.

Ring Tone

Mobile phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.
Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Caller ID Information

Name priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.
Number priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.

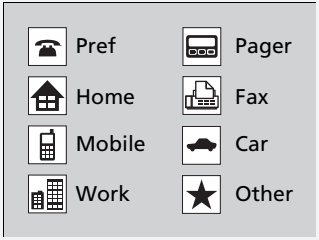
1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Continued

■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

■ To store a speed dial number

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .
From **Call history**:
▶ Select a number from the call history.
From **Phonebook**:
▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
From **Phone number**:
▶ Input the number manually.

■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change speed dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

Speed Dial

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.

■ **To delete a speed dial number**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete speed dial**, then press .
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

■ Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

Continued

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Phonebook**, then press ⊙.
3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate ⟲ to select the initial, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select a name, then press ⊙.
5. Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊙.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.
➔ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 270

■ To make a call using a phone number



1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Dial**, then press ⊙.
3. Rotate ⟲ to select a number, then press ⊙.
4. Rotate ⟲ to select [ ], then press ⊙.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number

This function is disabled while the vehicle is moving.
➔ **Limitations for Manual Operation** P. 270

■ To make a call using redial

1. Press the [ ] button or the [ ] button.
2. Rotate ⟲ to select **Redial**, then press ⊙.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using redial

Press and hold the [ ] button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

■ To make a call using the call history

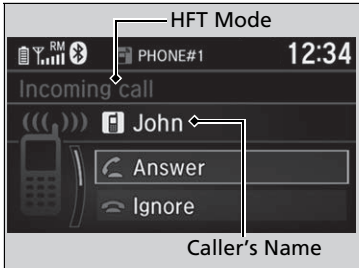
Call history is stored by **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, and **Missed calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call history**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, or **Missed calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the button to answer the call.
Press the button to decline or end the call.

To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

To make a call using a speed dial entry

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting
Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Press the button again to return to the current call.
Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons. Rotate to select the icon, then press .

Continued

■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
Swap call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Transfer call: Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.
Dial tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



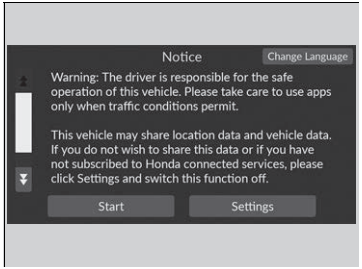
1. To view the available options, press the button.
2. Rotate to select the option, then press .
   ▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

Dial tones: Available on some phones.

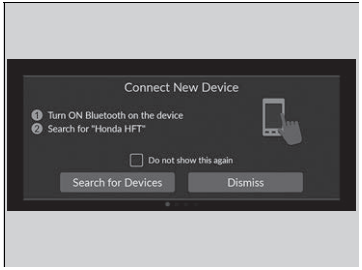
Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the data upload will be displayed.



Select **Start**.

- ▶ If you want to change the settings for data upload, select **Settings**, then select the ON/OFF settings on the **Location and vehicle data sharing** screen.
- ▶ If you do not select **Start**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.
- ▶ If there is no registered device, select **Start** and the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed.
- ▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.



■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   - ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.

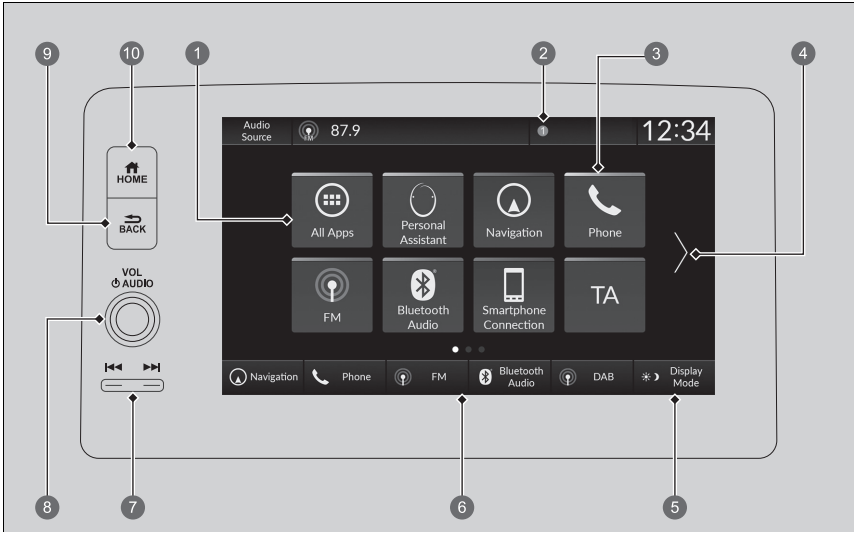
Start Up

Location and vehicle data sharing
ON: Available the data communication.
OFF: Not available the data communication.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ **Display Mode** Icon
❻ Mode Change Switch Icons
❼ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❽ **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❾ BACK (Back) Button
❿ HOME (Home) Button

Audio System Function

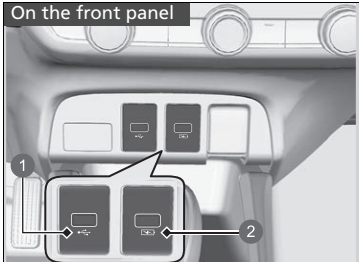
This screen is shown for the left-hand drive models. For the right-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

Features

All Apps: Displays the all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment. Each time you select , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
/ (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
(Back) Button: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.
(Home) Button: Presses to go to the home screen.

Continued

■ USB Ports



❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones
❷ Only for charging devices

■ On the front panel ( )

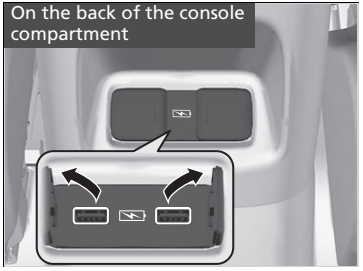
The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ On the front panel ( )

The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.



■ On the back of the console compartment

These USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to them.

USB Ports

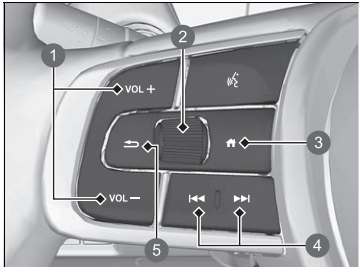
- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless requested by the device. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

❶ **VOL +/VOL −** (Volume) Buttons
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ (Home) Button
❹ / (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❺ (Back) Button

VOL +/VOL − (Volume) Buttons
Press VOL +: To increase the volume.
Press VOL −: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Continued

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the (back) button for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
FM/AM/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio
▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- When listening to the radio
  Press |▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀|: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀|: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  Press and hold |▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press and hold |◀◀|: To go back to the previous song.

On-Board Owner's Manual

You can view the content of the owner's manual on the Display Audio. This function is linked to Honda Personal Assistant.

Honda Personal Assistant P. 292

Open the Owner's Manual

1. Select **All Apps**.
2. Select **Owner's manual**.

Install/Update the Owner's Manual

When you can install or update the owner's manual, the notification will be sent automatically.

To update:
1. Tap the notification.
▶ The version screen will display.
2. Select items to be updated.
3. Tap **Update**.

If you unselect an item on the version screen, you will not receive any notifications for it.

On-Board Owner's Manual

This function does not cover all languages available for the Display Audio.

Changing the language of the Display Audio will also change the language of the owner's manual. If the owner's manual is not available or installed in that language, the owner's manual will default to English.

Install/Update the Owner's Manual

There may be differences in the displayed content depending on the version of the owner's manual.

If the owner's manual is not installed yet, you can install it via Wi-Fi.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 335

For languages except English, Germany, French, Italian and Spanish

If you install the owner's manual in a new language, the owner's manual you previously downloaded will be removed.

Honda Personal Assistant

This is a voice-controlled personal assistant that can set navigation destinations and control music playback, as well as share weather information and give guidance on vehicle use.

■ Using Honda Personal Assistant

Say "*OK, Honda*" and Honda Personal Assistant will activate. Then make a request such as "*I want to go to the nearest restaurant.*" You can also activate it by tapping the Personal Assistant icon on the audio/information screen.

■ Settings

Changes the Honda Personal Assistant settings.

1. Select **Personal Assistant**.
2. Select **Options**.
3. Select an option.

- **Honda Personal Assistant: ON**[*1]**/OFF**
  The assistant can be deactivated.
- **Wake Word (OK Honda): ON**[*1]**/OFF**
  Launch the Assistant.
- **Language: English/German/Spanish/French/Italian**
  Change the Honda Personal Assistant language.
- **Fuel type: E10**, **SP95/Unleaded**[*1], **SP98/Super**
  Set the type of petrol to be displayed in the petrol station search results.
- **Example Phrases**
  Display example phrases that Honda Personal Assistant can recognise.

*1: Default Setting

Honda Personal Assistant

The function may not work in some countries. Ask a dealer for details.

If the audio system language is changed to a compatible one, the assistant language will automatically change as well.

Changing the assistant language will not change the audio system language.

When you press the (talk) button on the steering wheel while Honda Personal Assistant is activated on the screen, it recognises your voice.

Voice Control Operation*1

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation.

The voice control system uses the (talk) and (back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights on the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

- Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.
  The system recognises only certain commands.
  Available voice commands.
  Voice Portal Screen P. 294
- Close the windows.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone on the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a clear, natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

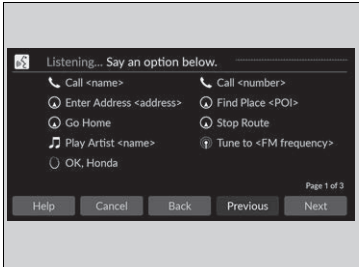
*1: Languages that the voice control system recognises are English, German, French, Spanish, and Italian.

Voice Control Operation*1

When you press the button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

Continued

■ Voice Portal Screen



When the (talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.
For a complete list of commands, say *"Help"* after the beep.

Depending on the selected mode, the displayed commands are different on the voice portal screen. The commands recognised are the same regardless of which screen is selected.
Normal Mode: A list of example commands is displayed to quickly complete your desired function.
Assist Mode: A list of basic commands is displayed to guide you step by step through the voice menu.

You can change the mode on the **General Settings** screen.
➡ **Voice Control** P. 351

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognised.

■ General Commands

When the voice portal screen is displayed, it will change to the top screen of each function by using the global commands.
- *Music Search*
- *AM*
- *FM*
- *Navigation*
- *Phone*
- *OK Honda*

■ Phone Commands

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognises the Phone command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

■ Phone Commands
- *Call <name>*
- *Call <number>*

The system recognises an only contact name in the stored phonebook of your phone. If full name is registered in first name field, the system will recognise the first name and last name as one contact name.

Phone commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

■ Audio Commands

When the system recognises the Audio command, the screen will change the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

■ FM Commands
- *Tune to <FM frequency>*

■ AM Commands
- *Tune to <AM frequency>*

■ **iPod Commands**
- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Genre <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Genre <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ **USB Commands**
- *List Album <name>*
- *List Artist <name>*
- *List Playlist <name>*
- *Play <artist> <album>*
- *Play*
- *Play Album <name>*
- *Play Artist <name>*
- *Play Music <text:media_combo>*
- *Play Playlist <name>*
- *Play Song <name>*

■ Navigation Commands

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

■ Honda Personal Assistant Commands

The screen changes to the Honda Personal Assistant screen.

➡ **Honda Personal Assistant** P. 292

■ **Honda Personal Assistant Commands**
- *OK, Honda*

■ Standard Commands

- *Voice Help*
- *Cancel*
- *Back*

Voice Help are readout voice guidance for Help on current screen.

■ List Commands

- *Previous*
- *Next*
- *Yes*
- *No*

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.



Audio/Information Screen

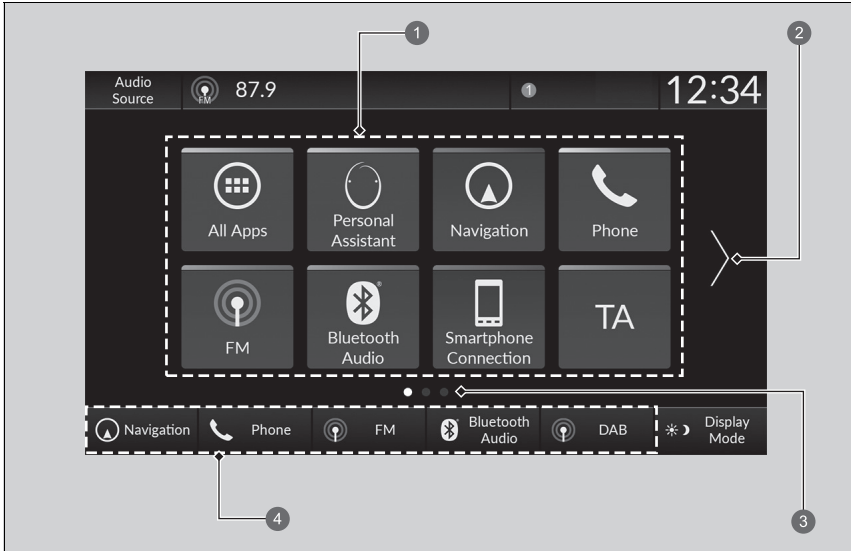
Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 345

App Shortcut Function



1 App Shortcut Icons
2 Arrow
3 Page Indicator
4 Mode Change Switches

■ To change to a next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

App Shortcut Function

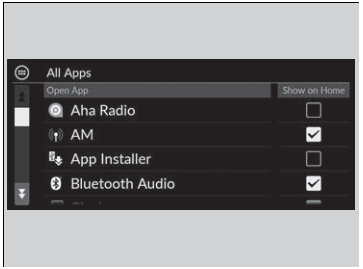
The home screen can be added up to 7 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

Continued

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 358

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 358

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to five icons on the bottom of the home screen.



❶ Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select and hold an icon.

▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.

▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.

4. Select **Done**.

▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.



1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

1 System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select **Audio Source** on the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

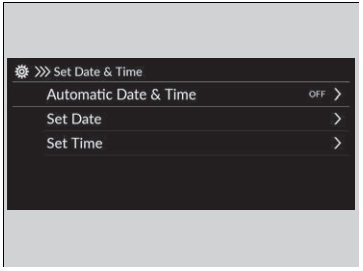
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

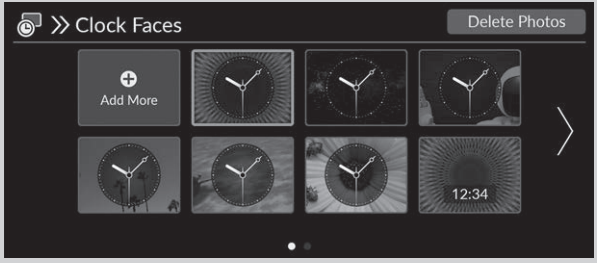
The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
System P. 346

■ Clock Wallpaper Setup



■ Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
USB Ports P. 288
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Clock Faces**.
6. Select **Add More**.
▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.
7. Select a desired picture to import.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
8. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
9. Select **Transfer**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

Continued

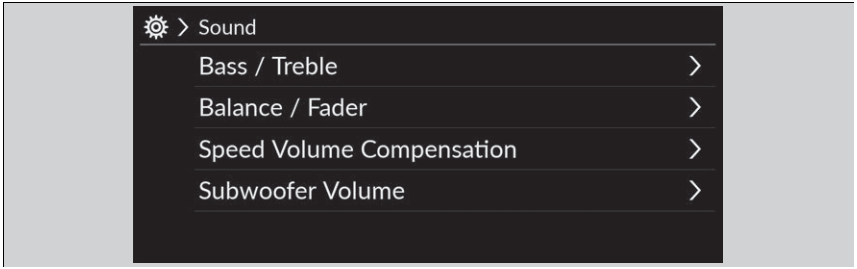
■ **Select clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ **Delete clock wallpaper**

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select an audio source.
2. Select **Sound**.
3. Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:
- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)
- **Subwoofer Volume*:** Sub Woofer, Centre Speaker

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, **Speed Volume Compensation**, and **Subwoofer Volume***, select **Default** on each setting screen.

* Not available on all models

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes. Select (Display Mode) to cycle through the display modes (Day to Night to Off).

■ Switching Display Mode Manually



Select (Display Mode).

▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.

▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by swiping or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.



System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with the telematics control unit (TCU) through the subscription-based service.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 302

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:

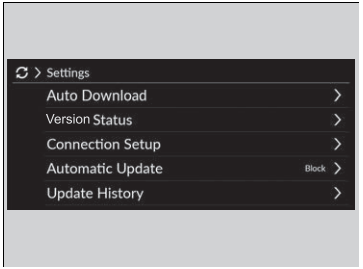
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

Continued

■ System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- **Auto Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Automatic Update**
- **Update History**

■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Auto Download**.

5. Select the access point, then select **Allow**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Block**.

■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Version Status**.

■ **Connection setup**

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Connection Setup**.

5. Select **OK**.

6. Select **Change Mode**.

7. Select **Network**.

▶ If the vehicle's Wi-Fi is turned off, select **OFF**.

■ **Automatic update settings**

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic update setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Automatic Update**.

5. Select **Accept**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Decline**.

■ **View the update history**

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Update History**.

Continued

■ How to Update Wirelessly

■ Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
▶ It will return to the network list.
8. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ If the audio system requires a password, enter a password.
9. Select **Connect**.

■ How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update with a USB Device

Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   USB Ports P. 288
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

Update the audio system

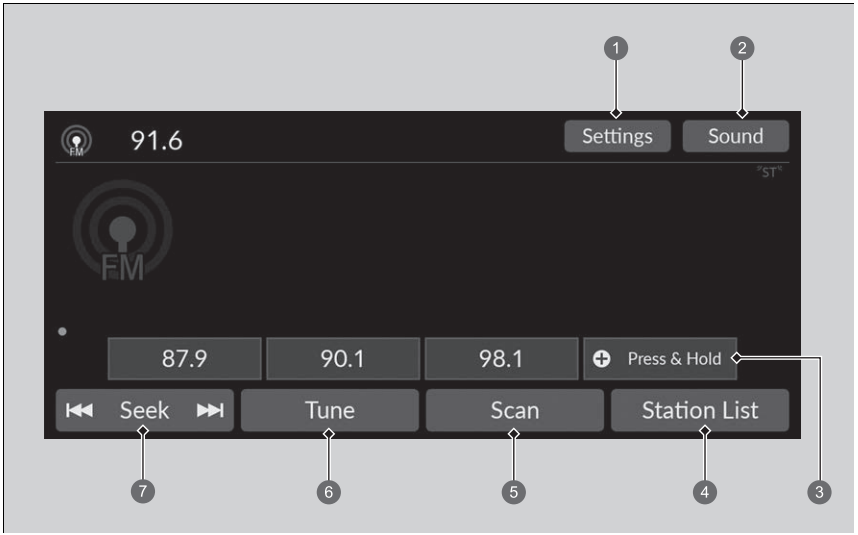
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   USB Ports P. 288
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A USB device with a minimum of 8 GB of free space or more is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Playing FM/AM Radio



❶ **Settings Icon**
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **Station List Icon**
❺ **Scan Icon**
❻ **Tune Icon**
❼ **Seek Icon**

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

■ Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select ♫ (audio) on the left selector wheel.
Audio Remote Controls P. 289

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

Continued

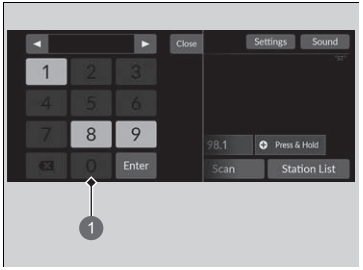
■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

➔ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 307

■ Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

You can tune the range of FM frequency between 87.5 to 108.0MHz.

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

■ Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

Continued

■ Settings

Changes the RDS settings.

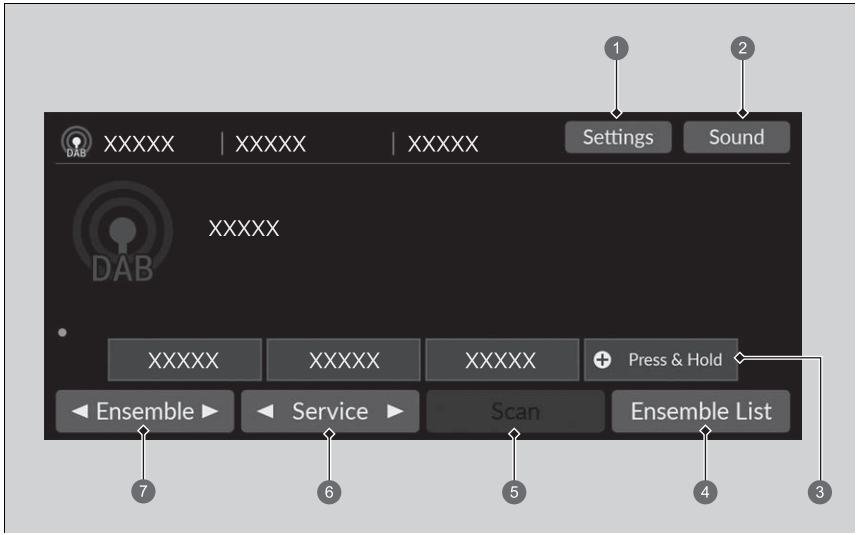
1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF***1)

*1: Default Setting

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



❶ **Settings Icon**
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Preset Icons**
❹ **Ensemble List Icon**
❺ **Scan Icon**
❻ **Service Icons**
❼ **Ensemble Icons**

Continued

■ Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.
To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

■ Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.
1. Select ◀ to ▶ the tune ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

■ Service

Tunes the service component.
To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select (audio) on the left selector wheel.
Audio Remote Controls P. 289

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.
Adjusting the Sound P. 307

■ Settings

Changes the DAB settings.
1. Settings.
2. Select an option.

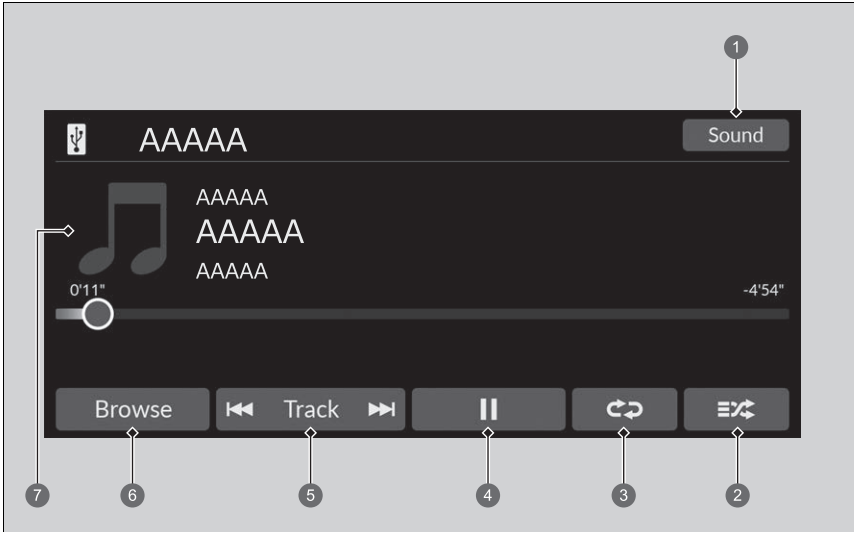
- **DAB-DAB Link:** Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **DAB-FM Link:** Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **Scan Mode:** Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds. (**All**/**Ensemble***1)

*1: Default Setting

Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 288



1. **Sound Icon**
2. **Shuffle Icon**
3. **Repeat Icon**
4. **Play/Pause Icon**
5. **Track Icons**
6. **Browse Icon**
7. **Cover Art**

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 377

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select a search category.

3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

■ To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

Continued

■ How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➔ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 307

Playing Aha™

Aha™ can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when your smartphone is connected to the audio system by Wi-Fi.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 335



Playing Aha™

Aha™ by Harman is a cloud-based service that organises your favourite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

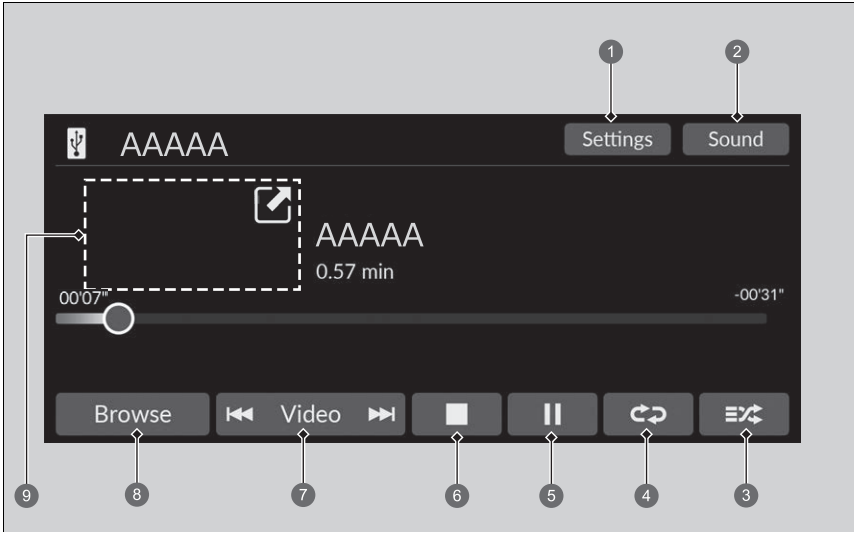
The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

You can set up Aha™ account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit *www.aharadio.com* for more information.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 288



❶ **Settings Icon***
❷ **Sound Icon**
❸ **Random Icon**
❹ **Repeat Icon**
❺ **Play/Pause Icon**
❻ **Stop Icon***
❼ **Track*/Video* Icons**
❽ **Browse Icon**
❾ **Cover Art*** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player*** (Playing a video)

Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

* Not available on all models

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 379

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 377

Continued

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

■ Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

■ When playing a video file*

(stop): Select to stop a file.

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

■ How to Change a File

Track*/Video* Icons

You can select to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

 * Not available on all models

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➲ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 307

■ Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

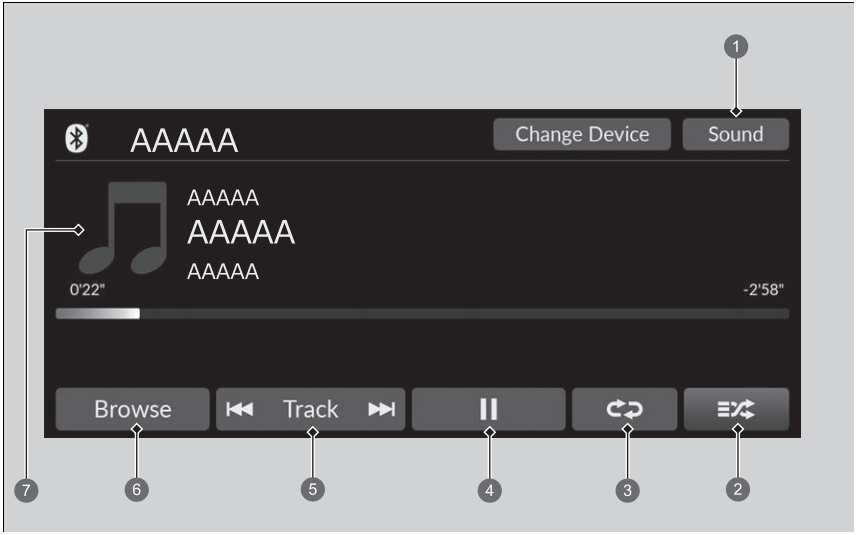
- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal**[*1]**/Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right**[*1]**/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 366



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible.
To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting the audio mode.

Phone Setup P. 366

■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

■ Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

Continued

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

■ Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

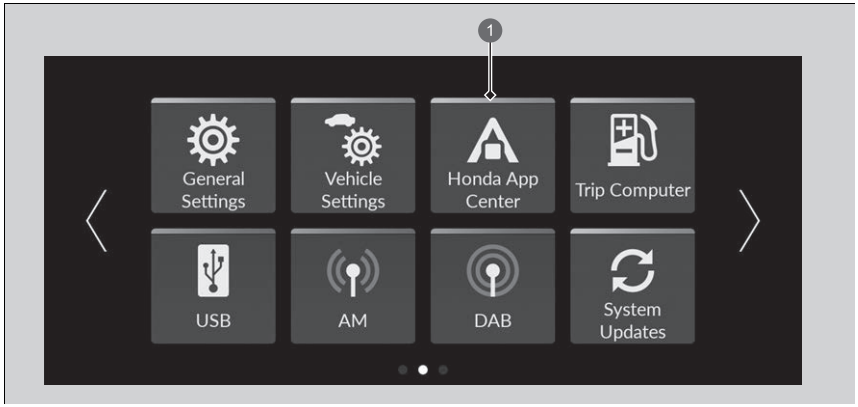
➔ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 307

On Board Apps

Honda Connect has the capability of On Board Apps which may be created by Honda or by 3rd parties. Apps may be already installed or can be downloaded through Honda App Center. Some Apps require internet access which can be established by Wi-Fi Connection.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 335

Please visit the below web address for further information:
https://globalappcenter.com/



❶ Honda App Center Icon
Honda App Center provides access to a variety of App related services.

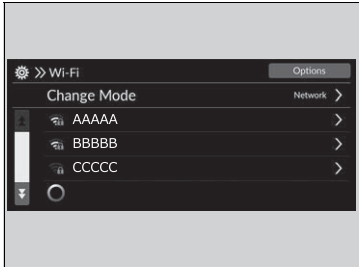
Continued

- Using the Display Audio while driving can take your attention away from the road, causing a crash in which you could be seriously injured or killed. Only operate system controls when the conditions permit you to safely do so. **Please always adhere to the laws of the territory when operating this device.**
- Applications on the head unit are subject to change at anytime. This may mean that they are not available or operate differently. Honda shall not be liable to you in such instances.
- Applications available on the device may be provided by parties other than Honda to which 3rd party software licences and charges may apply.
- Data usage and roaming charges may result in using applications on the device in conjunction with your mobile phone and Honda is not liable for any costs you might incur from such use. Honda recommends you consult your mobile phone network provider in advance.
- Downloading applications from the Honda App Center will be subject to Terms and Conditions which can be found at: *https://globalappcenter.com/*, and may also incur charges.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the audio system to the Internet using Wi-Fi on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
   - ▶ If the data sharing settings is to **OFF**, the message will be displayed on the screen. You need to change to **ON**.
     System P. 346
   - ▶ If you want to turn off the Wi-Fi mode, select **OFF**.
8. Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
   - ▶ To add a new network or select the saved networks, select **Options**.
   - ▶ If **Options** is selected, **Add Network** and **Saved Networks** can be registered.

Continued

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
Status Area P. 302

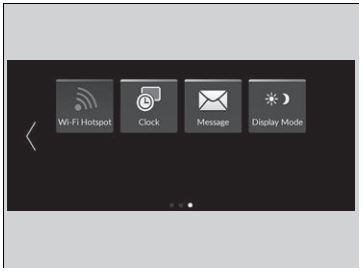
In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

■ Setting the Audio System as a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You can set the network as a Wi-Fi Hotspot of this audio system.
Use the following steps to setup.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
   ▶ If **Wi-Fi Hotspot** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Turn on the hotspot.
4. Select **Settings**.
   ▶ **Network SSID** and **Password** are displayed, and you can change the settings.

The following settings are available for the setup.

- **Network SSID:** Set this network name.
- **Password:** Set password for require entering password when connecting Wi-Fi device to this network.
  ▶ Passwords can be created with half-width alphanumeric characters and spaces, as well as some special characters.

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Setting the Audio System as a Wi-Fi Hotspot

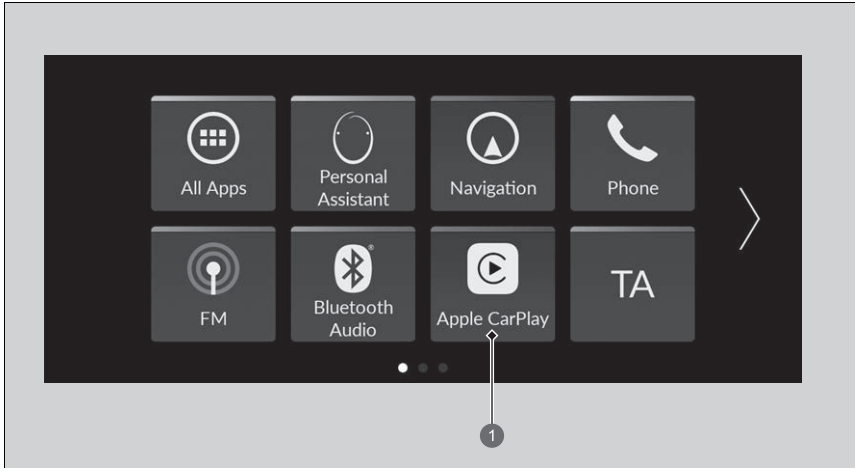
Special characters that can be used in passwords.

!	)	;	]
"	*	<	^
#	+	=	_
$	,	>	`
%	-	?	{
&	.	@	|
'	/	[	}
(	:	¥	~

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

USB Ports P. 288



1 Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay P. 339

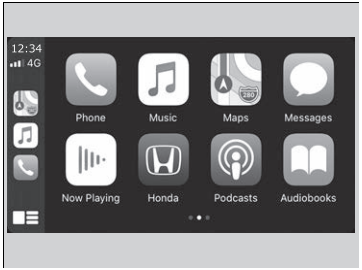
When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 366

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Continued

■ Apple CarPlay Menu



- **Phone**
  Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**
  Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
  Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.
- 
  Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

■ Enabling Apple CarPlay

■ Connecting Apple CarPlay using the USB cable to the USB port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.

USB Ports P. 288

▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.

2. Select **Yes**.

▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

■ Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly

1. Pair and connect the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 366

2. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.

▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.

3. Select **Connect**.

▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

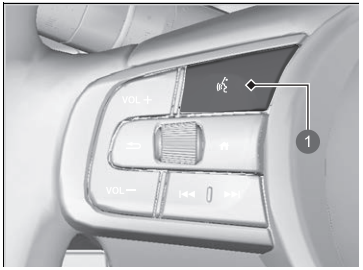
Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.



❶ (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

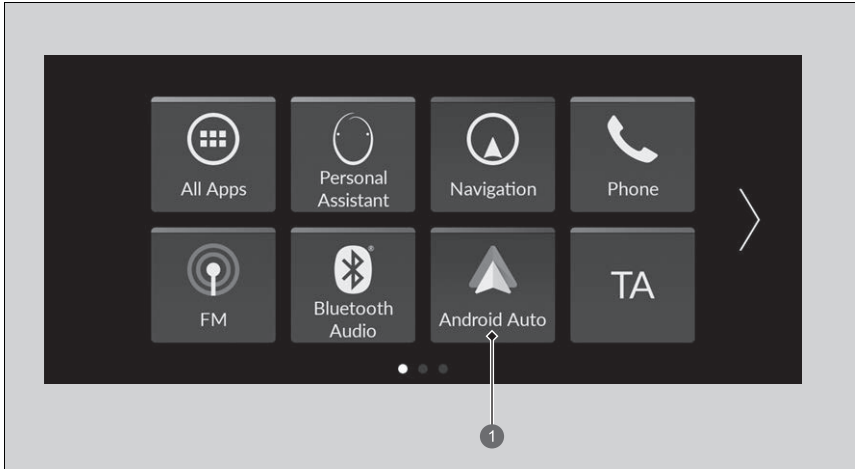
Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

USB Ports P. 288

Auto Pairing Connection P. 343



1 Android Auto

Android Auto

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto.

Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

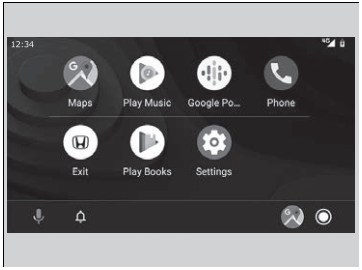
USB Ports P. 288

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 366

Continued

■ Android Auto Menu



- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Play Music**
  Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Exit**
-
  Operate Android Auto with your voice.
-
  You can check Android notifications.
- (Android Auto Home)
  Display useful information organised by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

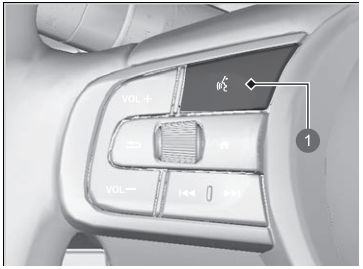
You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



❶ (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

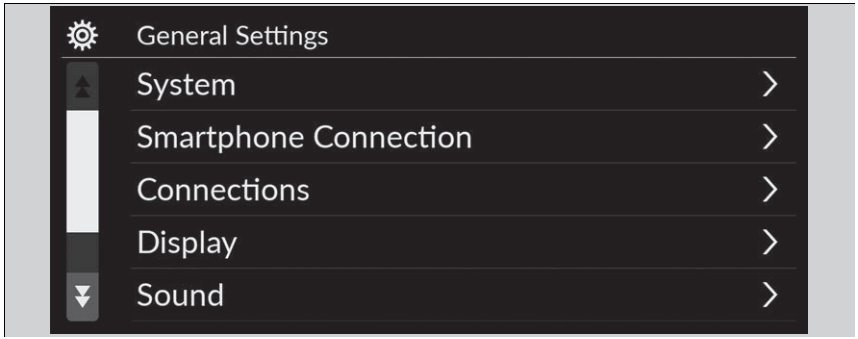
You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the icon in the lower-left corner of the screen.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** P. 346
- **Smartphone Connection** P. 348
- **Connections** P. 349
- **Display** P. 350
- **Sound** P. 350
- **Camera** P. 351
- **Voice Control** P. 351

Customized Features

When you customize settings:
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Put the transmission into P.

Continued

■ **System**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Selects **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 304	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 304	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY**[*1]**/ YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12-H**[*1]**/24-H**

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/ information screen language separately.	**English***1 See other selectable languages on the screen.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High/Normal***1
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Location and vehicle data sharing	**Location and vehicle data sharing**		**ON/OFF***1

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 358	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ **Smartphone Connection**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366	—
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366	—

■ **Connections**

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network/ Smartphone**[*2]**/OFF**[*1]
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 366	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected.

■ **Display**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode[*1]	Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode. ➡ **Display Setup** P. 308	—
Night Mode		
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

*1:Default Setting

■ **Sound**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 307	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Balance / Fader			
Speed Volume Compensation			
Subwoofer Volume*			

* Not available on all models

■ **Camera**

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera*	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 518	**ON*1/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera*** P. 518	**ON*1/OFF**
Cross Traffic Monitor*		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor*** P. 513	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Voice Control**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Voice Control Mode	Selects a mode of the voice portal screen. ➡ **Voice Control Operation** P. 293	**Assist/Normal*1**

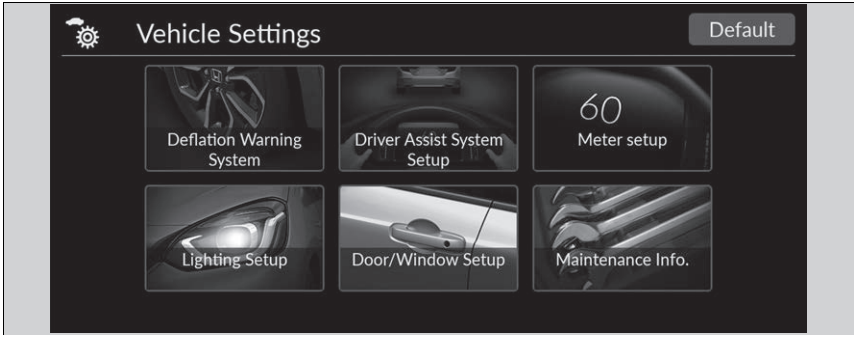
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Deflation Warning System** ➡ P. 353
- **Driver Assist System Setup** ➡ P. 353
- **Meter setup** ➡ P. 355
- **Lighting Setup** ➡ P. 356
- **Door/Window Setup** ➡ P. 357
- **Maintenance Info.** ➡ P. 357

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.

➡ **App Shortcut Function** P. 297

■ **Deflation Warning System**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System	Cancels/Calibrates Deflation Warning System. ➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 423	**Calibrate/Cancel**

■ **Driver Assist System Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Selects distance for Forward Collision Warning audible and visual alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 435	**Far/Normal***1**/Near**
ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns On/Off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow** P. 447	**ON/OFF***1
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 478	**Early/Normal/Delayed***1
Lane keep assist beep	Selects On/Off the LKAS alert for not detecting road lines. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 467	**ON/OFF***1

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Blind spot information*	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind spot information System*** P. 427	**Audible and visual alert***1/**Visual Alert Only**
Traffic Sign Recognition System	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 487	**Display***1/**None**
Traffic Sign Recognition System Speed Limit Warning	Enables over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 487	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

 * Not available on all models

■ **Meter setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Warning message	Selects whether to display the warning message. ➔ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Adjust outside temp. display	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➔ **Outside Temperature** P. 138	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➔ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 144 ➔ **Speed & Time** P. 146	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➔ **Range / Fuel / Trip Meter** P. 144 ➔ **Speed & Time** P. 146	**When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]
Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	**Max/Mid**[*1]**/Min**
Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➔ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 148	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Speed/distance units	Selects the trip computer units. ➔ **Change Units** P. 152	Left-hand drive type **km/h · km**[*1]**/mph · miles** Right-hand drive type **km/h · km/mph · miles**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

■ **Lighting Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Lights** P. 222	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 194	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Headlight integration with wipers	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 194	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Door/Window Setup**

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless lock notification	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by remote. **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 173	**ON***1**/OFF**
Security relock timer	Selects relock timing after unlocking vehicle with the key fob without opening any doors. **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 173	**90sec/60sec/30sec***1
Auto Folding Door Mirror	Selects door mirror auto folding operation.	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ **Maintenance Info.***

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance Info.	Resets the maintenance information. **Service Reminder System*** P. 530	**Selects Reset Items**

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

HFT Buttons



❶ **VOL** ＋/**VOL** － (Volume) Buttons
❷ (Talk) Button
❸ (Home) Button
❹ Left Selector Wheel
❺ (Back) Button

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

Phone Setup P. 366

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

Favourite Contacts P. 371

Continued

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.

(Home) button: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 375

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

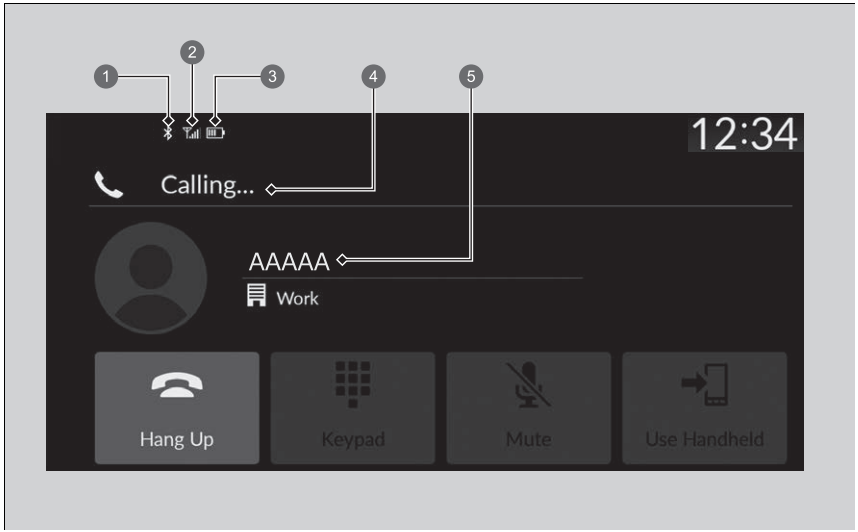
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Continued

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

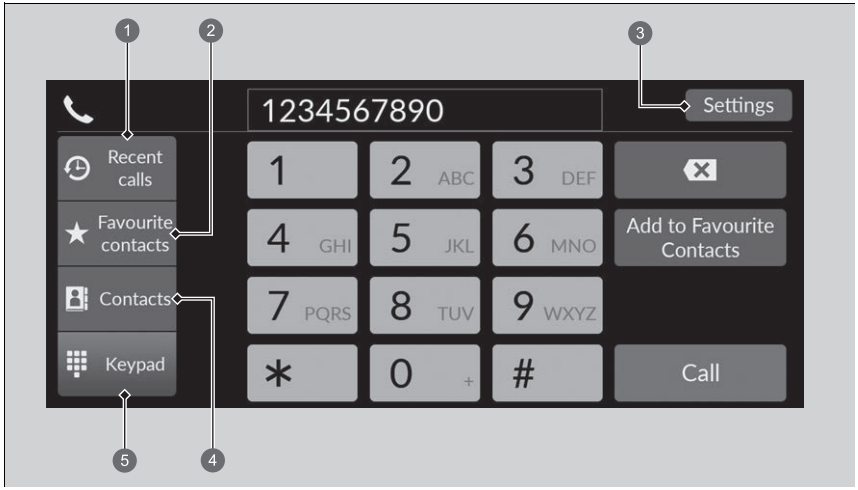
Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➔ **Favourite Contacts** P. 371

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.



❶ **Recent calls**
❷ **Favourite contacts**
❸ **Settings**
❹ **Contacts**
❺ **Keypad**

HFT Menus

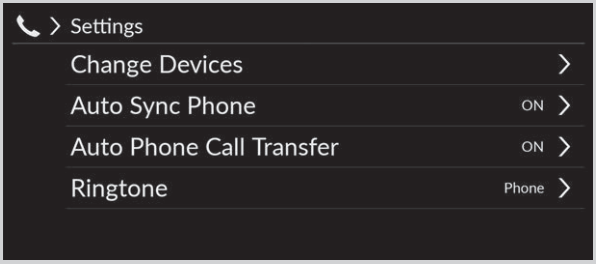
Some functions are limited while driving.

Continued

Recent calls: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 373
Favourite contacts: Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.
➡ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 373
Settings: Changes the phone settings.
➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 365
Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.
➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 374
Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.
➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 374

Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Phone Setup P. 366

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls P. 369

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

Automatic Transferring P. 370

Ringtone: Selects the ring tone.

Ring Tone P. 370

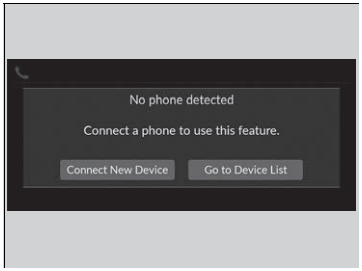
Continued

■ Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

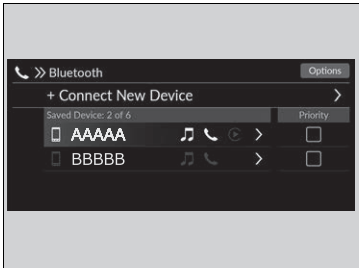
Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
: The phone can be used with HFT.
: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

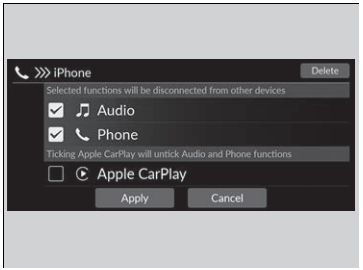
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

Continued



■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   - ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   - ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
6. Select **Apply**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

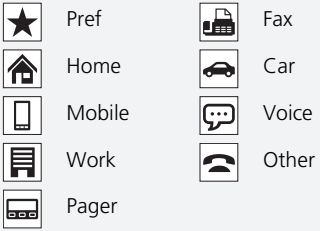
When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

Continued

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

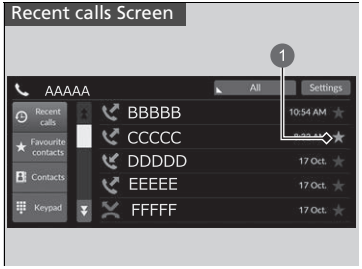
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

Ring Tone

Vehicle: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

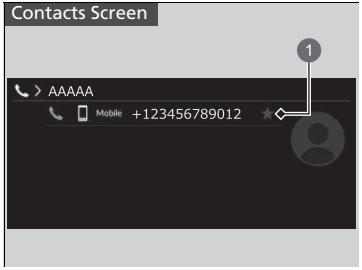
■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen



❶ Star Icon

Contacts Screen



❶ Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Recent calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

On the Keypad screen

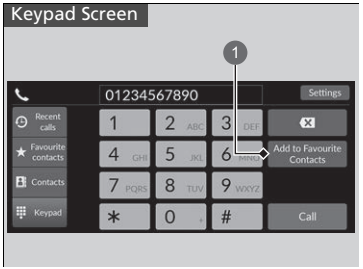
3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.

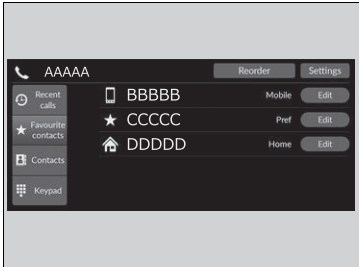
▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.

Continued

Keypad Screen



1 Add to Favourite Contacts



■ To edit a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**.
   ▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
   ▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
   ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled: Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

Continued

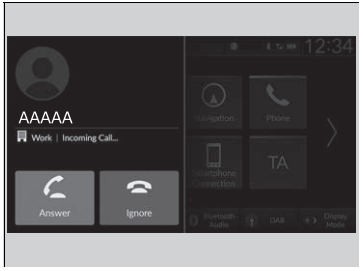
■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.

To pick the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

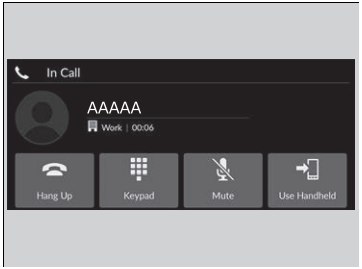
Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

Continued

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Models with colour audio

Error Message	Solution
USB error	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
Unsupported ver	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
Connect retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable file	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
No song	USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, or WAV files in the USB flash drive. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
Device no response	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
HUB unsupported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

Continued

Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
No response from device	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Connect Retry	
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about five seconds, then plays the next song.
Unsupported Device	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Models with colour audio

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/ iPhone 6/iPhone6 Plus

Models with Display Audio

Model
iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/ iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XS/ iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

Continued

■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.

Models with colour audio

MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV

Models with Display Audio

MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

■ Recommended Devices

■ MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

■ AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

Continued

■ **MKV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ **ASF/WMV File**

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv	
Compatible audio codec	WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

Models with colour audio

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press.
3. Rotate to select **License**, then press.

Models with Display Audio

1. Select **General Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **Detail Information**.

■ Software for the Display Audio*

Copyright 2014 jQuery Foundation and other contributors
http://jquery.com/

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Automatic emergency call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the SRS unit in the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

1 eCall Indicator

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

Emergency Call (eCall)

Your vehicle is equipped with the 112-based eCall service system.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the on-board sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

Manual emergency call P. 388

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.
- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 5 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the 112-based eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:
- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

Emergency Call (eCall)

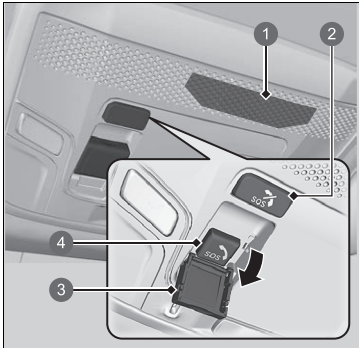
Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:
- both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

Manual emergency call



If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually: Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds has elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

❶ Microphone
❷ **SOS** Cancel Button
❸ Cover
❹ **SOS** Button

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

Israeli models

מוצר : מערכת טלמטיקה (כולל סוללת גיבו)

סימן רשום : DENSO

ארץ ייצור : ראה מוצר

דגם : OGEY10

שנת ייצור : ראה מוצר

Name of Importer: **Mayer's Cars and Trucks Co. Ltd.**
Importer's Address: 17 Yitzhak Sadeh St. Tel Aviv 677775, Israel

Emergency Call (eCall)

Data privacy

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

Continued

Emergency Call (eCall)

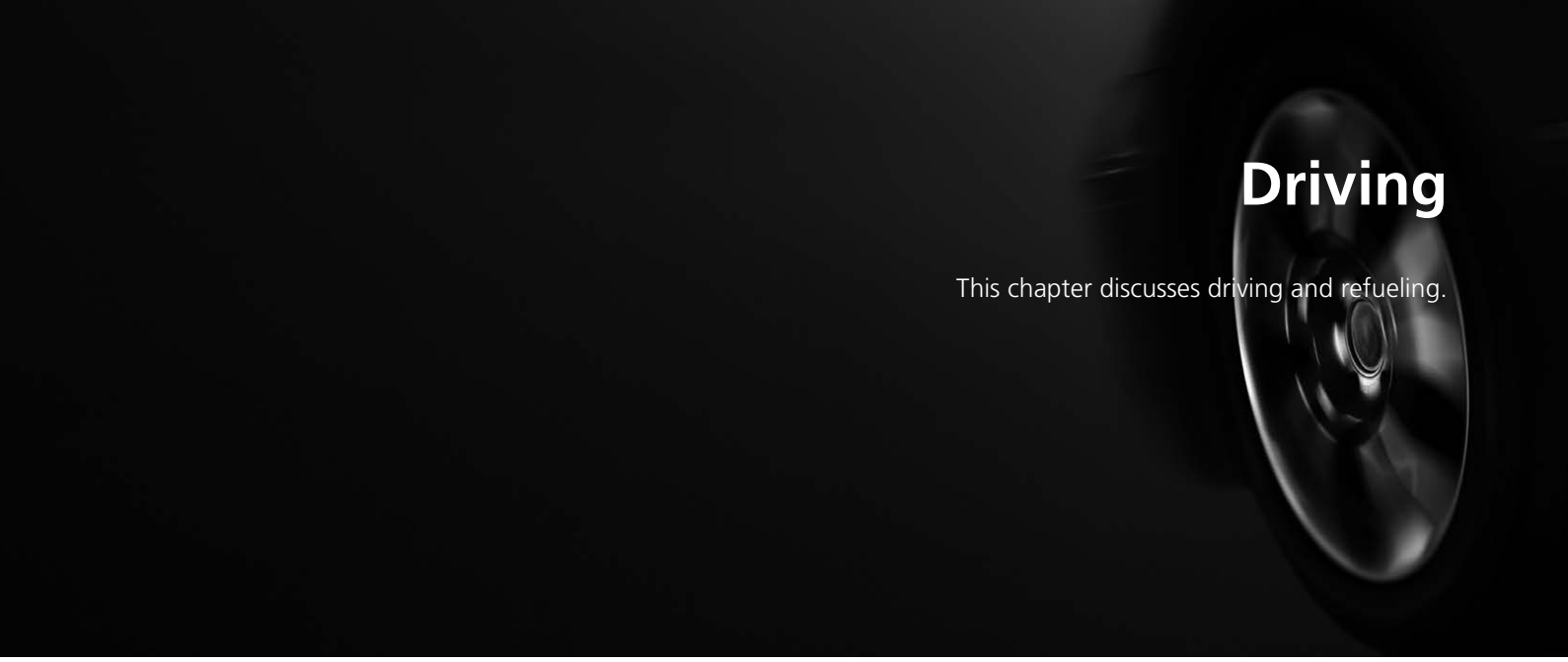
Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Honda eCall Service Information:
If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service booklet for list of offices.



Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 392
Towing a Trailer 396
When Driving
- Turning on the Power 397
- Precautions While Driving 400
- Transmission 402
- Shifting 403
- ECON Mode 405
- Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 406
- Adjustable Speed Limiter 407
- Intelligent Speed Limiter 413
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 420
- Agile Handling Assist 422
- Deflation Warning System 423
- Blind spot information System* 427
- High Voltage Battery 431

Honda Sensing 432
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 435
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 447
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 467
- Road Departure Mitigation System 478
- Traffic Sign Recognition System 487
- Front Wide View Camera 494

Braking
- Brake System 496
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 503
- Brake Assist System 504
- Emergency Stop Signal 505

Parking Your Vehicle
- When Stopped 506
- Parking Sensor System* 508
- Cross Traffic Monitor* 513

Multi-View Rear Camera* 518
Refueling 520
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 523

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

■ Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 568
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 211
  ➡ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 218
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➡ **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 208
  ➡ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 207

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.
➡ **Headlight Adjuster** P. 198

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➡ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 48
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➡ **Indicators** P. 106

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 634

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 634

Load Limit

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

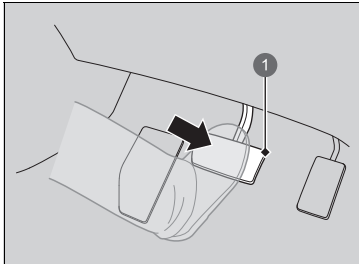
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Turning on the Power



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



1 Brake Pedal

2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres (8,000 feet).

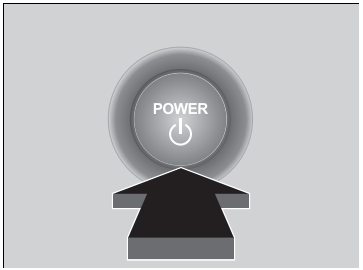
When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.
If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the power system does not activate.
Immobilizer System P. 181

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel the brake pedal slightly sink down. This is normal.

Continued



3. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal.
4. Check the (ready) indicator.
▶ Keep depressing the brake pedal until the indicator comes on.
▶ The indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
▶ If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the driver information interface.
Indicators P. 106

Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into P.
2. Press the **POWER** button.

Turning on the Power

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 608

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system.
If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.
You can start driving with the indicator on.
If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the indicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.
Ready Indicator P. 110

Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the indicator is on, then put the transmission into D. Select R when reversing.
2. With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.
Parking Brake P. 496

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into D, B when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognise that you can start.
Make sure to check if the indicator is on before you start to drive.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Precautions While Driving

■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in N, as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km (625 miles) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the power system or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Transmission

■ Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

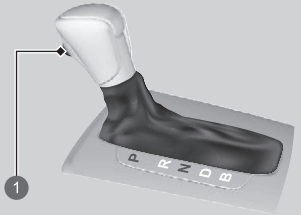
■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
Used:
For normal driving.

B **Drive (B)**
Used when driving down a long hill and to increase regenerative braking.

❶ Release Button

Shifting

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that [P] is shown on the shift position indicator.

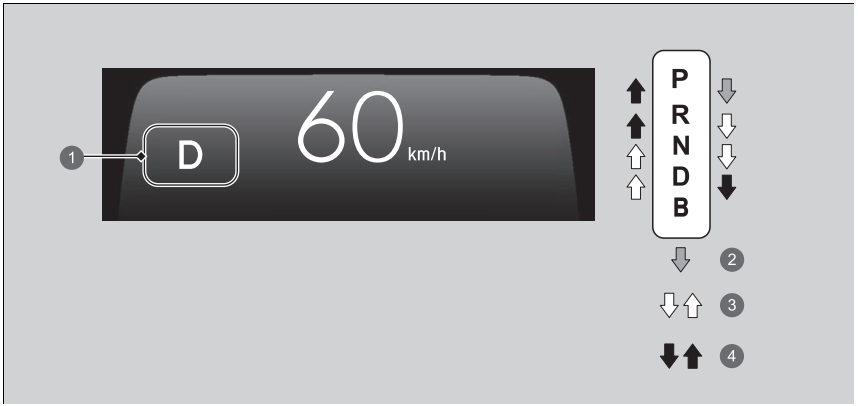
While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift lever is in [P].

You may occasionally find that it takes longer than usual for the vehicle to start moving when you select [R], release the brake pedal, and/or depress the accelerator pedal. This may occur when the High Voltage battery level is extremely low, and does not indicate a vehicle malfunction.

Continued

Shift Operation



1 Shift Position Indicator (Transmission System Indicator)
2 Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
3 Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
4 Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

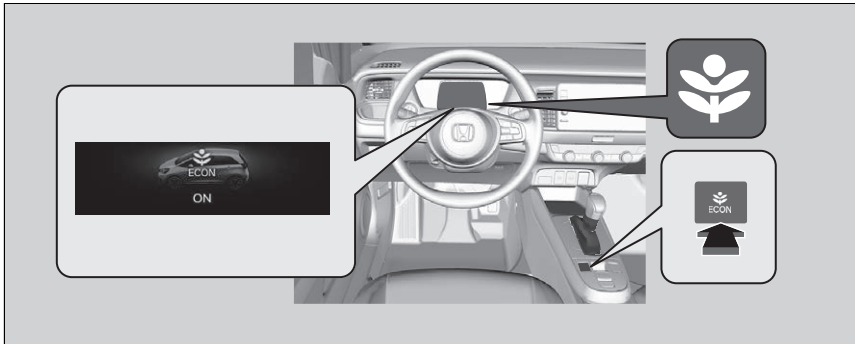
Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position is blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures –30°C, there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.
The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the climate control system and the accelerator pedal response.

To turn the ECON mode on and off, press the **ECON** button when the power mode is ON.

ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

Due to emergency brakes operation or driving conditions, you may not be able to change the mode.

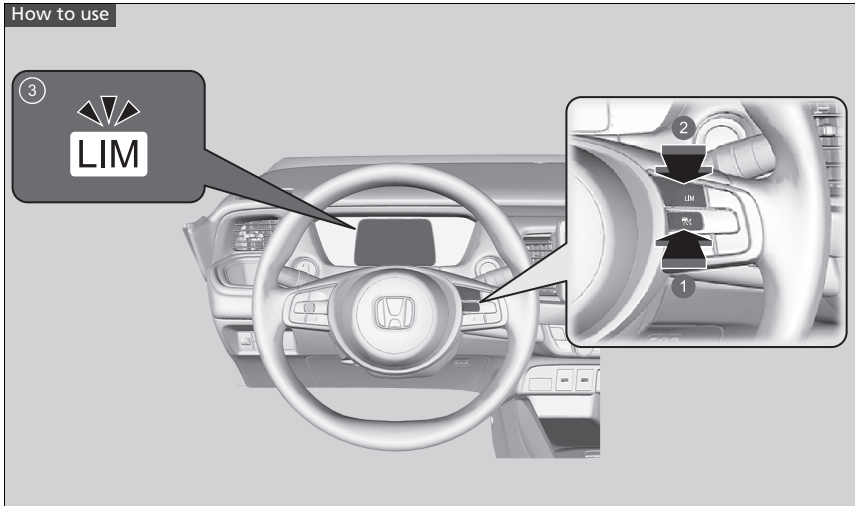
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Adjustable Speed Limiter

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).

How to use



❶ Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.
❸ **The Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

Adjustable Speed Limiter

⚠WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations.
It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

⚠WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

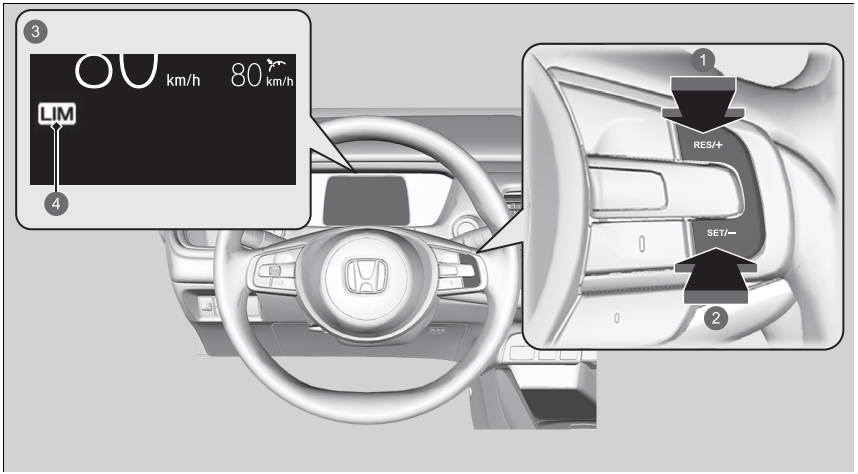
The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the Adjustable Speed Limiter and below systems at the same time.
-Adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow
-Intelligent speed limiter

Continued

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+** Button
2. **SET/–** Button
3. On when the adjustable speed limiter is set.
4. Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **SET/–** button when you reach the desired speed.
  The moment you release the **SET/–** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limit is set to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

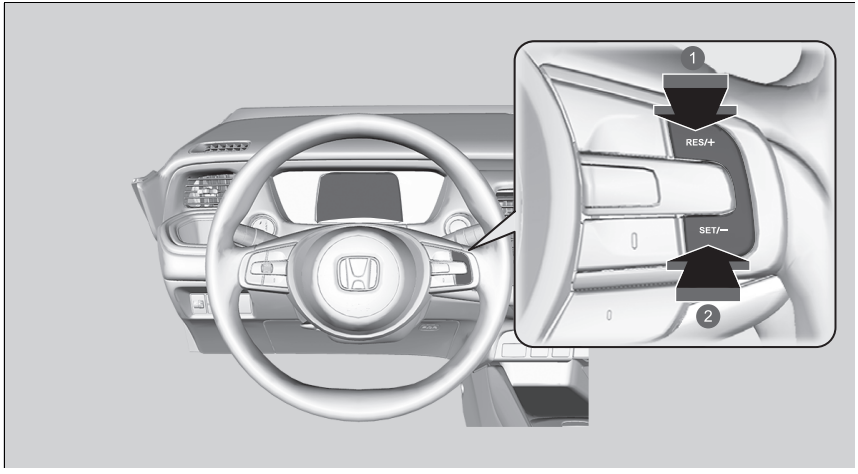
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between km/h and mph on the driver information interface* or audio/information screen*.

Change Units P. 152
Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345

* Not available on all models

To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** buttons on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h or 10 mph every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

Continued

■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.

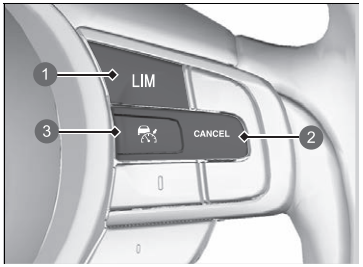
▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel



❶ **LIM** Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ Button

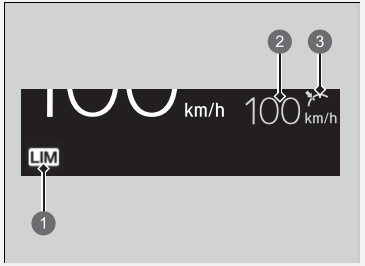
To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

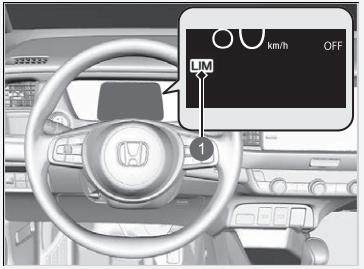
Resuming the prior set speed:
CANCEL button, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in gray.
When pressing the **RES/+** button, the adjustable speed limiter is activated with displayed speed.
If the adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.



❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Gray)
❸ Setting Status (Gray)

Continued

To Cancel



❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System** P. 487

Intelligent Speed Limiter

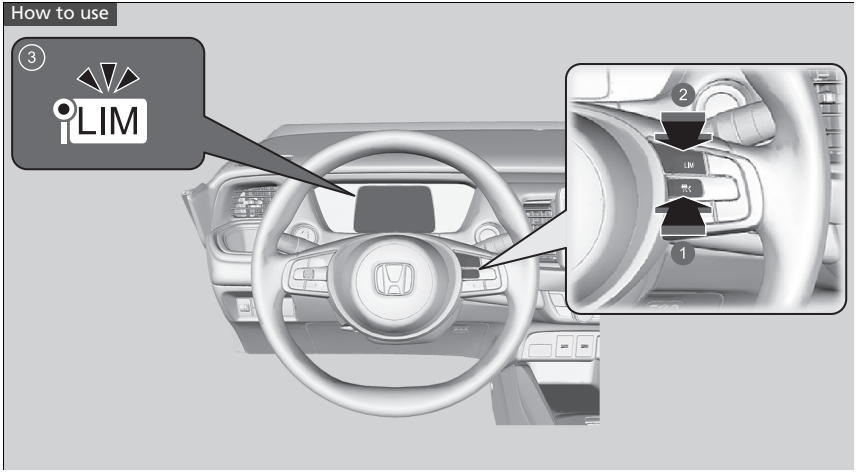
⚠WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

Continued

How to use



❶ Press the button on the steering wheel.
❷ If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.
❸ **The Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 487

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:
To cancel
- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

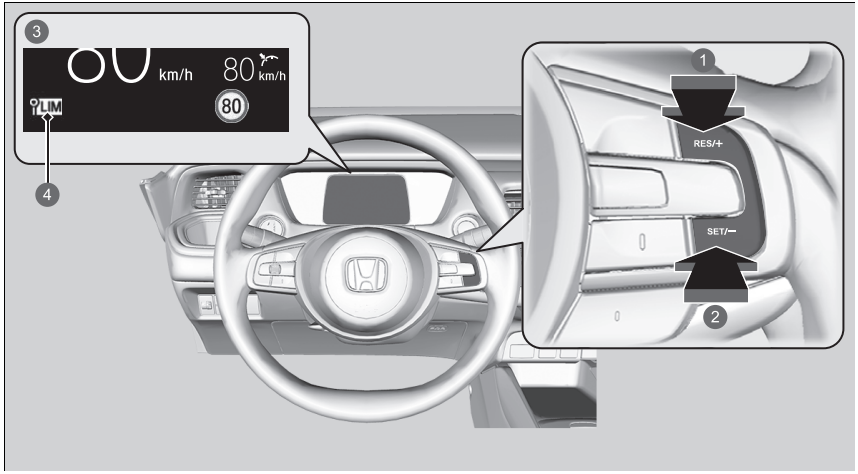
To exceed the speed limit temporarily
- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+** Button
2. **SET/–** Button
3. On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
4. Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- The moment you release the **SET/–** button or **RES/+** button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.
Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.

- **Change Units** P. 152
- **Settings*** P. 154
- **Customized Features** P. 345

To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.

* Not available on all models

Continued

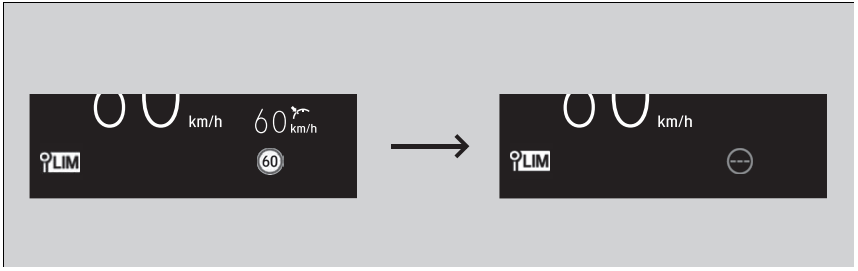
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign**

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



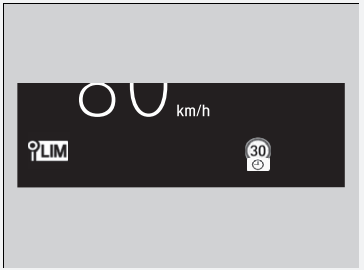
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.



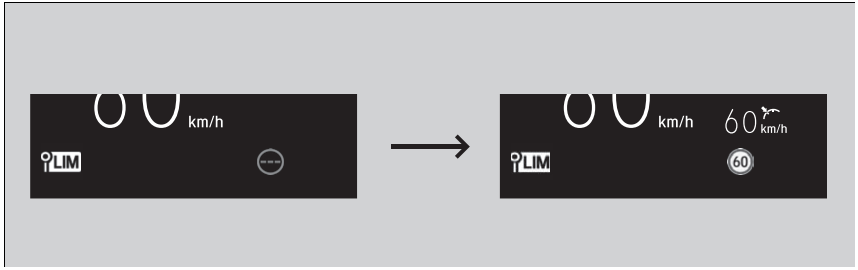
To Set the Speed Limit

The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.



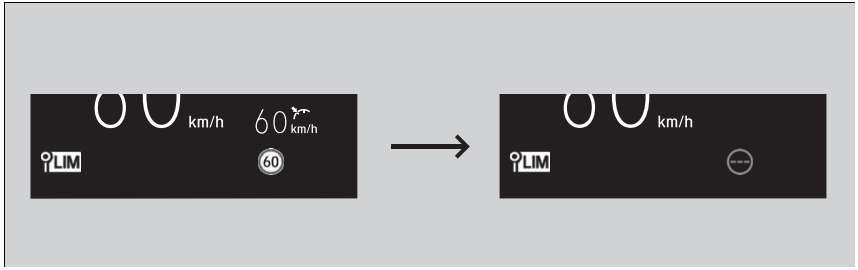
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused**

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



■ **When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated**

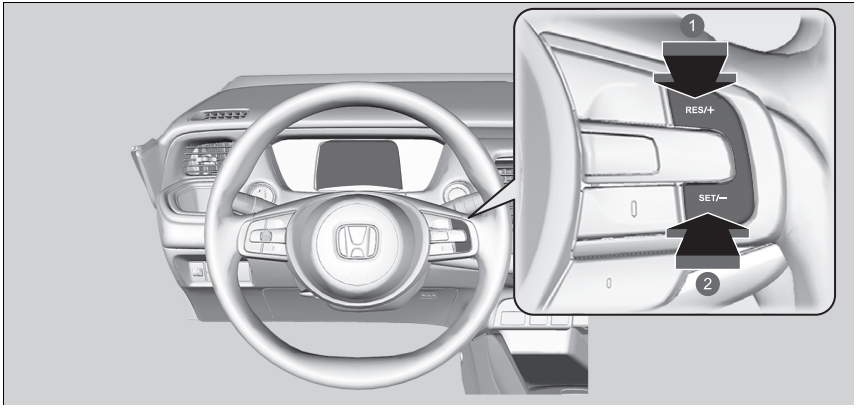
While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



Continued

To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



1 To increase speed
2 To decrease speed

- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h or +5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h or -5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

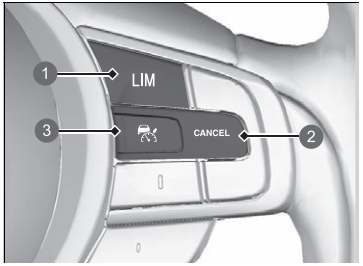
You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

To Cancel



To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

❶ **LIM** Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ Button

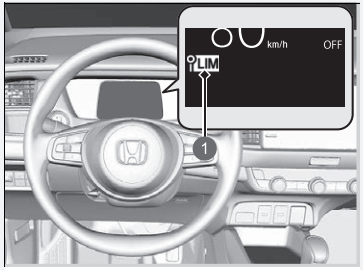
Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



❶ Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

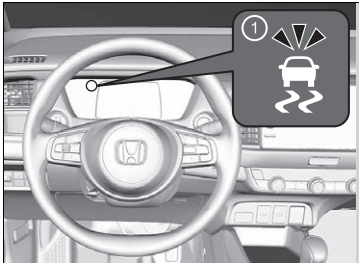
If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 487

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

❶ VSA System Indicator

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

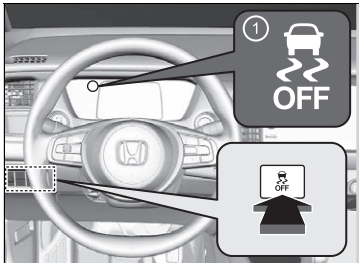
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) may come on after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA On and Off



1 VSA **OFF** Indicator

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

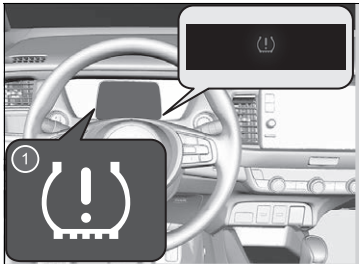
The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the gauge.

❶ Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  Checking Tyres P. 568

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in P.
- The power mode is in ON.

Continued

Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

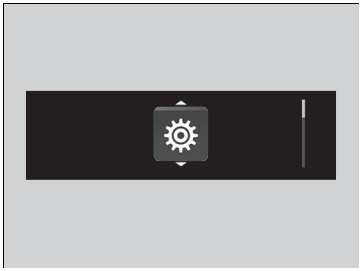
Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.
Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 568

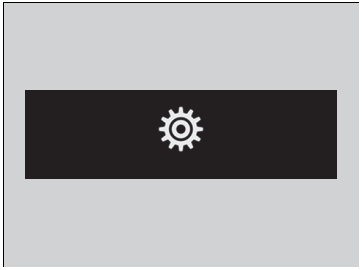
The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) may come on along with a message in the gauge after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



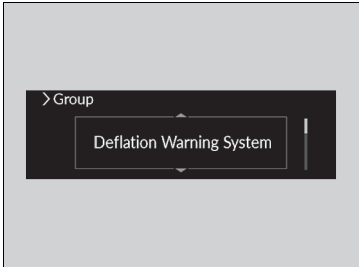
Models with colour audio

You can initialise the system from the settings on the driver information interface.

1. Press the [⌂] button to select ⚙, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to select ⚙, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel until **Deflation Warning System** appears on the display.

4. Press the left selector wheel.

▶ The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

Deflation Warning System

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres than the condition at initialisation.
- Tyre chains are used.

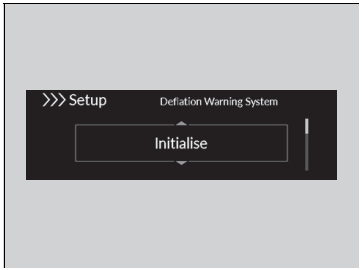
Deflation Warning System Initialisation

- The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h (25-62mph).
- During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

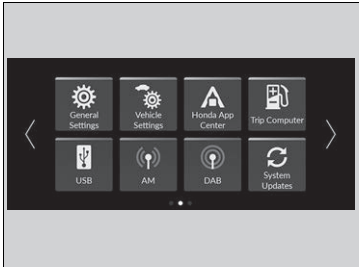
We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



5. Roll the left selector wheel and select **Initialise**, then press the left selector wheel.
▶ **Completed** screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

Continued



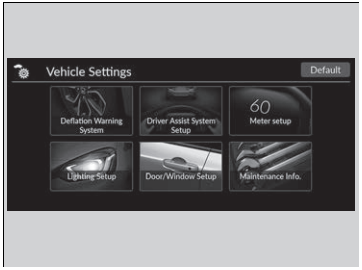
Models with Display Audio

You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

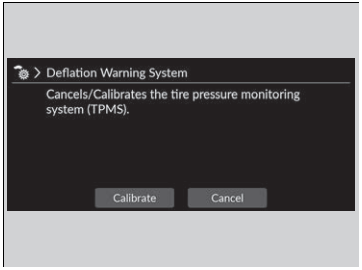
1. Set the power mode to ON.

2. Press the HOME button.

3. Select **Vehicle Settings**.



4. Select **Deflation Warning System**.



5. Select **Calibrate** or **Cancel**.

- If the **Calibration Failed to Start.** message appears, repeat step 5.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

Blind spot information System*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots." When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Blind spot information System*

⚠WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on blind spot information system may result in a collision.

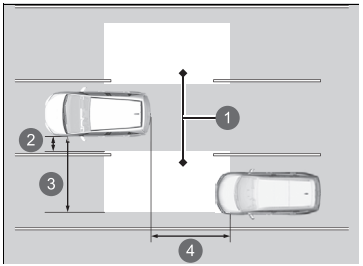
The system is for your convenience only.
Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the driver information interface appearing.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How the system works



❶ Alert Zone
❷ Approx. 0.5 m (1.6 ft.)
❸ Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)
❹ Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)

- Radar sensors detect a vehicle in the alert zone when your vehicle is moving forward at 20 km/h (12 mph) or faster.
- Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners

Blind spot information System*

You can turn off the audible alert using the audio/information screen.

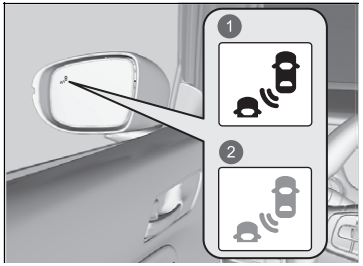
Customized Features P. 345

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

* Not available on all models

■ When the system detects a vehicle



❶ Comes On
❷ Blinks

Blind spot information System Alert Indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 50 km/h (31 mph) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 20 km/h (12 mph).

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

Blind spot information System*

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (rain, snow, and fog).
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

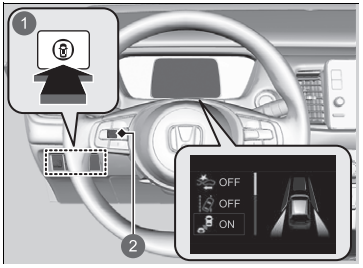
For a proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Blind spot information System On and Off



1 Safety Support Switch
2 Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the blind spot information system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

The blind spot information system is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you start the power system.

Blind spot information System*

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

Driver Information Interface P. 140

* Not available on all models

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Honda Sensing

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

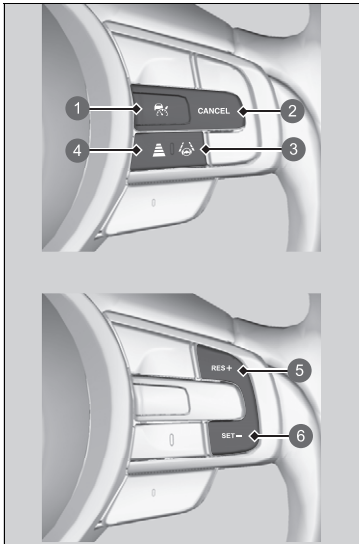
■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 435
- Road Departure Mitigation System P. 478
- Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 487

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow P. 447
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 467

■ Operation Switches for the ACC with Low Speed Follow/LKAS



❶ Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ LKAS Button
❹ Interval Button
❺ **RES/+** Button
❻ **SET/–** Button

■ Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow. Or press to cancel these systems.

■ LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

■ RES/+ and SET/– Buttons

Press to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or to adjust the vehicle speed.

■ Interval Button

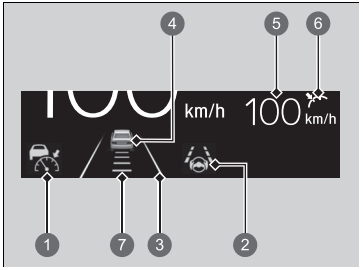
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued

■ Gauge Content



You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS.

❶ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS is ready to be activated.
- Green: The system is on or standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- Lane Lines: The system is on.
- Double Lane Lines: The system is standby.

❹ Indicates whether or not ACC with Low Speed Follow detected the vehicle ahead.

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
- White: Set Vehicle Speed
- Gray: Prior Set Speed

❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the setting status.
- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is not activated.

❼ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, pedestrians, or riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

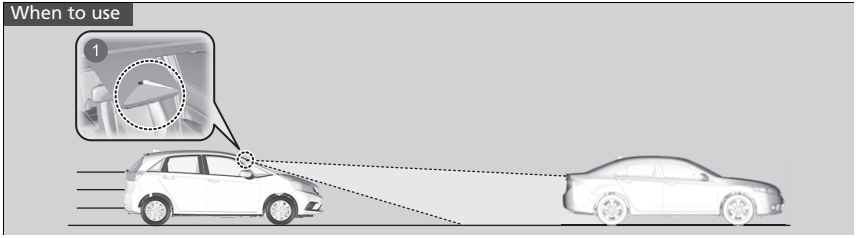
The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 440

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

Continued

■ How the system works



1 The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) and there is a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h (3 mph) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with oncoming vehicle when you turn left*1/right*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h (62 mph) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

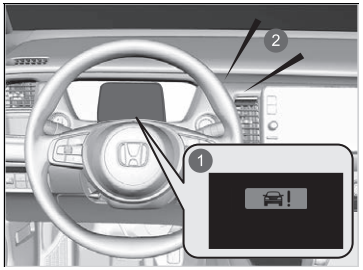
How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 440

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

❶ Visual Alerts
❷ Audible Alert

At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far**/**Normal**/**Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through the driver information interface* or audio/information screen* setting options.

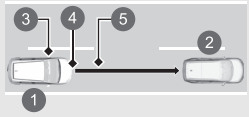
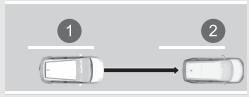
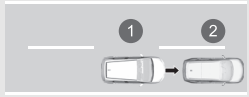
➔ **Settings*** P. 154
➔ **Customized Features** P. 345

* Not available on all models

Continued

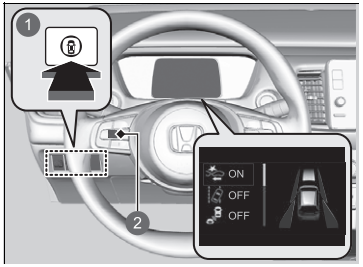
■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Far**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ Far
❹ Normal
❺ Near

CMBS On and Off



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 440

The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

➡ **Driver Information Interface** P. 140

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

Front Wide View Camera P. 494

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

Continued

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians or bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre (3.3 feet) or taller than about 2 metres (6.6 feet) in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, wheelchair, or other specially-shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is higher in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- When the vehicle or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*1/right*2 at an intersection etc.)*3.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type
*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*1/right*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

Continued

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on when:

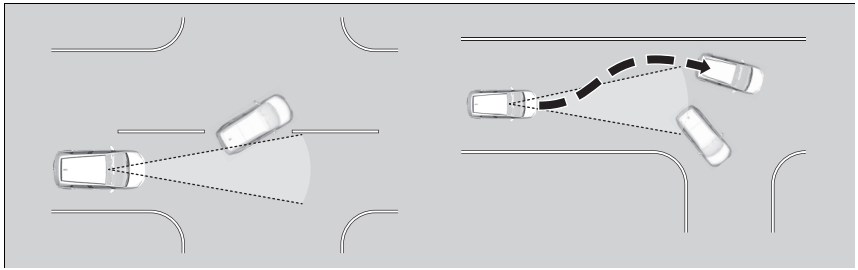
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

With Little Chance of a Collision

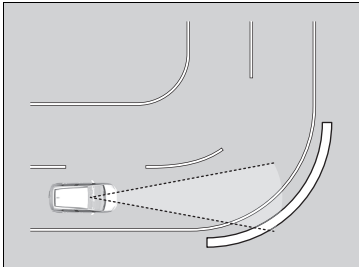
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle at an intersection, etc.

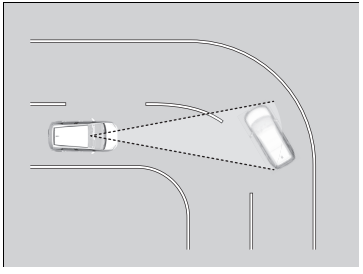


Continued

- When passing through a low or narrow gate at a speed well over the speed limit.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



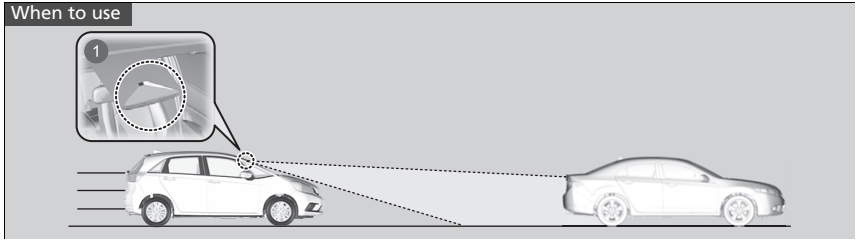
- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



1 The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h (112 mph).
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder

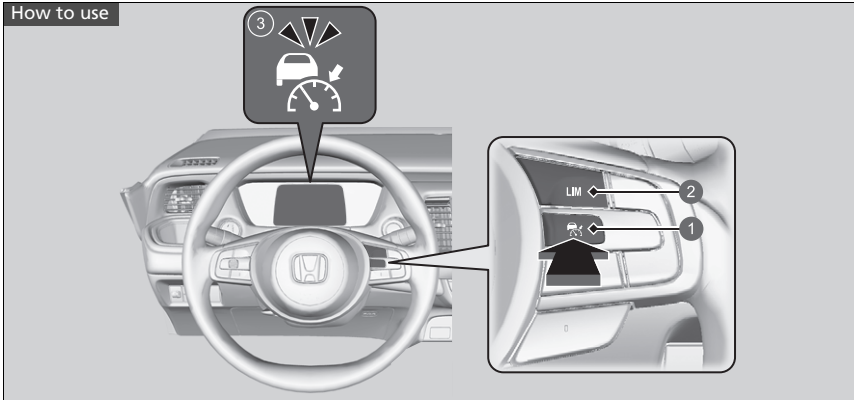
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Wide View Camera P. 494

Continued

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **LIM** Button
If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❸ **The Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

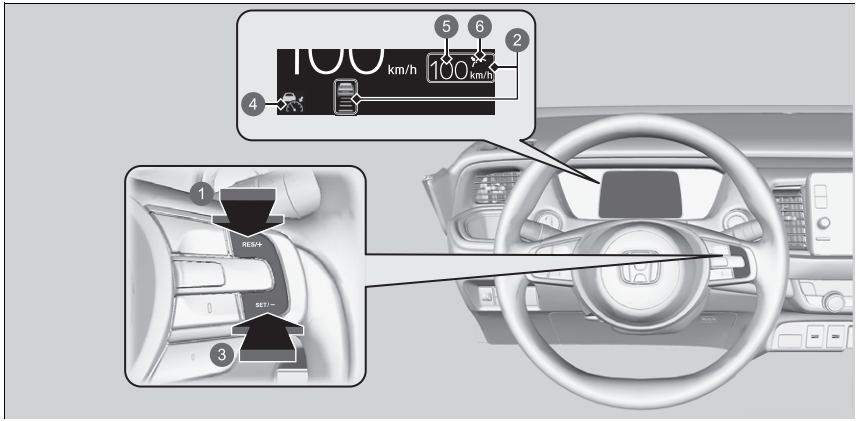
ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 457

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with Low Speed Follow will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.). It prevents the system from detecting the distance between your vehicle and vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.

To Set the Vehicle Speed



1. **RES/+** Button
   Press and release
2. On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
3. **SET/–** Button
   Press and release
4. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)
5. Set Vehicle Speed (White)
6. Setting Status (Green)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

The indicators for the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) may come on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface* or audio/information screen* between km/h and mph.

Change Units P. 152
Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345

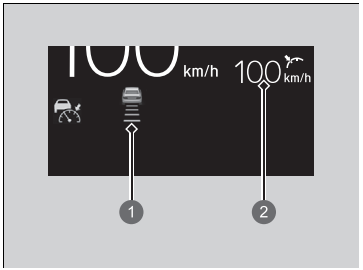
* Not available on all models

Continued

When driving at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** buttons when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h (18 mph): If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h (18 mph) regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

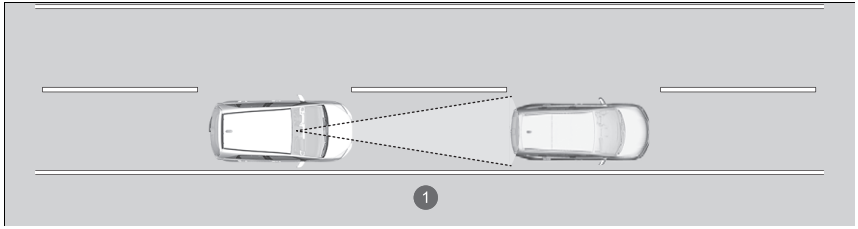
❶ Set Vehicle Interval
❷ Set Vehicle Speed

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 462



1 ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

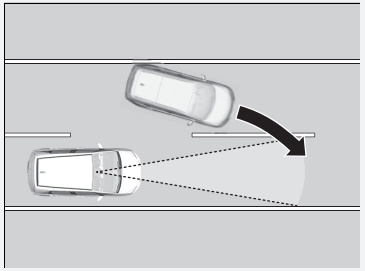


A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

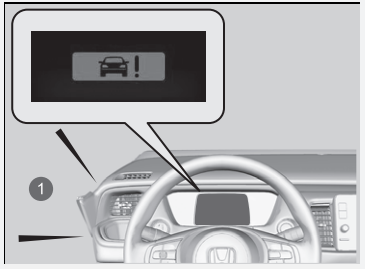
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



1 Audible Alert

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

Models with colour audio

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.
Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

Settings* P. 154

Models with Display Audio

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.
Change the **ACC vehicle ahead detected beep** setting.

Customized Features P. 345

* Not available on all models

When in Operation

Limitations

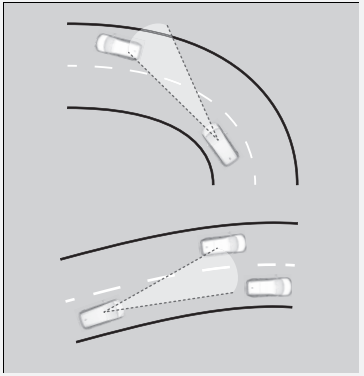
You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations P. 457

Continued

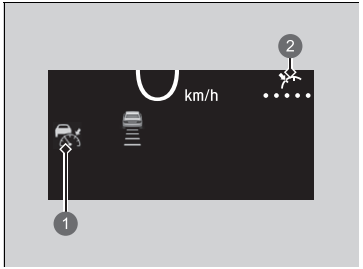
When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- ACC with Low Speed Follow may keep the interval between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead of you for a few seconds when a vehicle ahead of you enters/exits motorway or highway and then there is no vehicle in front of your vehicle.

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



❶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)
❷ Setting Status (Green)

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The ••••• message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the gauge blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop

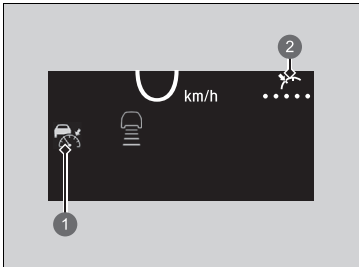
⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Continued



❶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)
❷ Setting Status (Green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

■ ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the indicator (amber) will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494

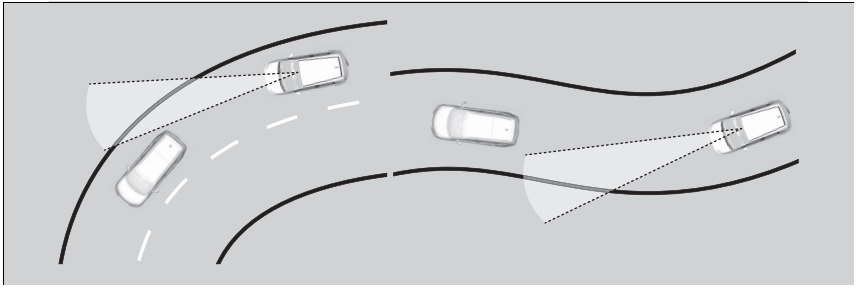
■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

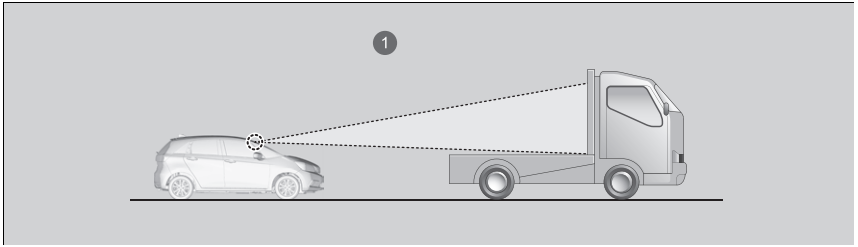
■ **Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

Continued

■ **Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly**

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is higher in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.

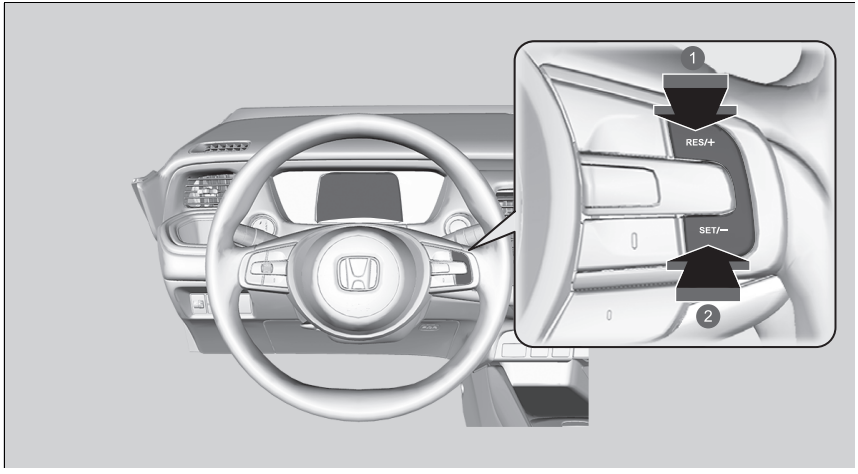


❶ Camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.

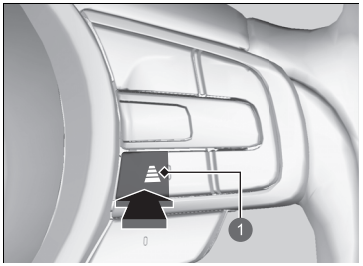
To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **RES/+** or **SET/–** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

Continued

■ To Set or Change Following-interval

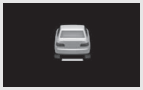


❶ Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)
Short		26.6 metres 87.3 feet 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 110.6 feet 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 113.5 feet 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 147.3 feet 1.6 sec
Long		44.0 metres 144.2 feet 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 187.3 feet 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 175.9 feet 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 229.6 feet 2.4 sec

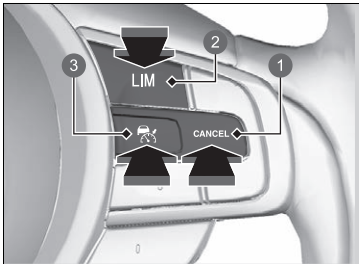
When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

Continued

■ To Cancel



❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ **LIM** Button
❸ Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+** button even if the vehicle is stopped.

When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in gray.

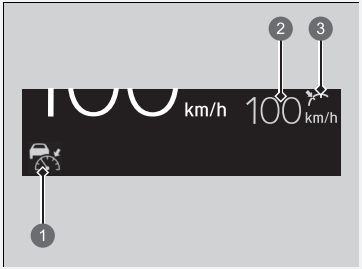
When pressing the **RES/+** button, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed. Then, when the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+** button during the prior set speed (in gray) is not displayed, the current vehicle speed is set as same as the condition of operating the **SET/–** button.

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.

To Cancel



❶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Gray)
❸ Setting Status (Gray)

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Continued

The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

In the following cases, a buzzer sounds, ACC with Low Speed Follow is deactivated, and the  message appears in the driver information interface.

- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

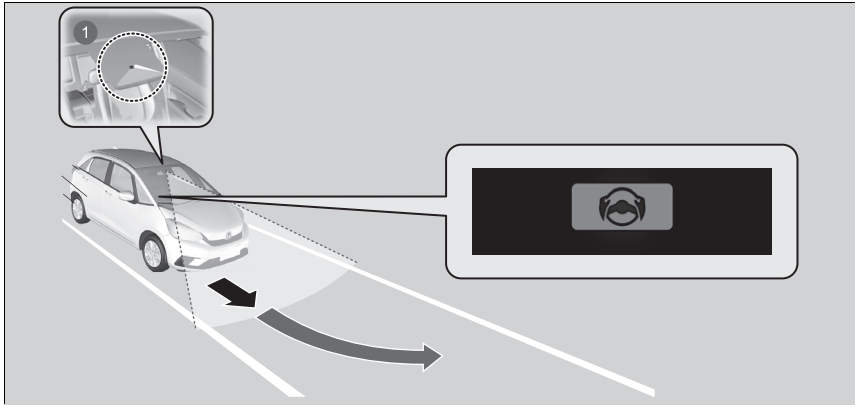
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



❶ Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

➡ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 494

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

➡ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 474

Continued

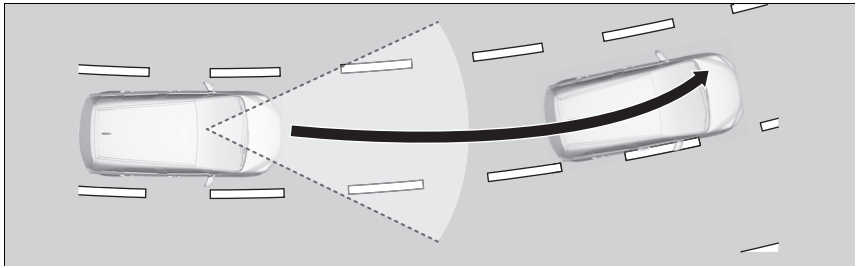
When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

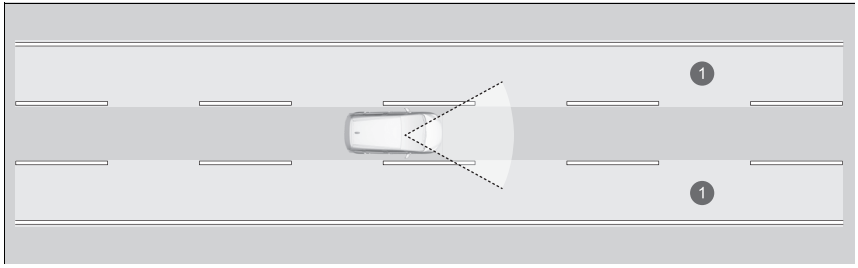
Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



❶ Warning Area

Continued

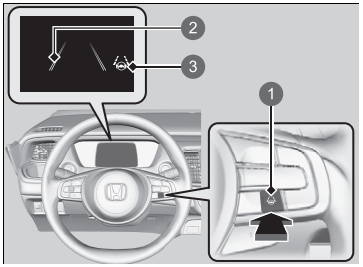
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.

■ How to activate the system



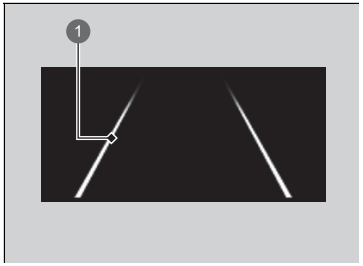
1. LKAS Button
2. Double Lane Lines
3. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)

1. Press the LKAS button.
▶ The double lane lines and lane keeping assist system (LKAS) indicator (green) appear on the gauge.
The system is activated.

When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

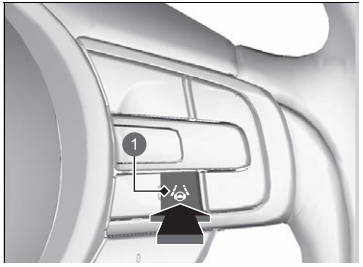
Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;
- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.



❶ Lane Line

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The double lane lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel

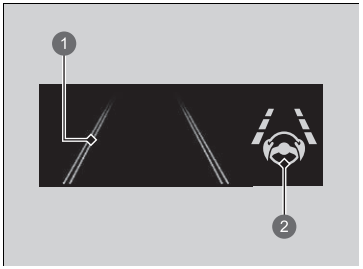


❶ LKAS Button

To cancel the LKAS:
Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Continued



1 Double Lane Lines
2 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)

When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the gauge change to double lane lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Set the wipers to high speed.
  ▶ Turning the wipers off or setting it to **LO** resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h (40 mph) or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h (45 mph) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h (115 mph).
- When the Road Departure Mitigation System is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**
In the following cases, double lane lines may appear on the screen, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may automatically be cancelled:
- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

You can set the beeper ON/OFF using the driver information interface* or audio/information screen*.
Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

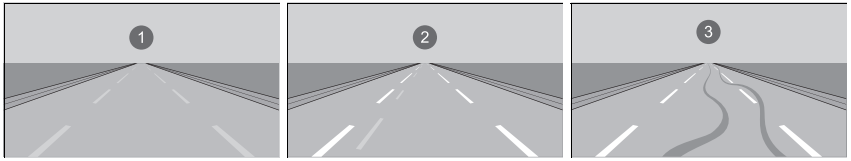
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white lines (or yellow lines).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

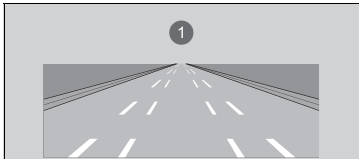
■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



❶ Faded lines ❷ Duplicate lines ❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

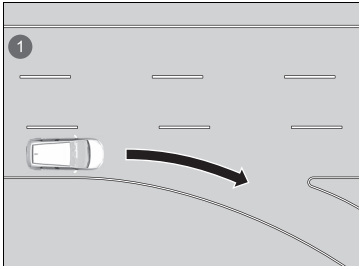


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

Continued

- Driving on roads with double lane line.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White lines (or yellow lines) are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



❶ Lane void of lines at junction

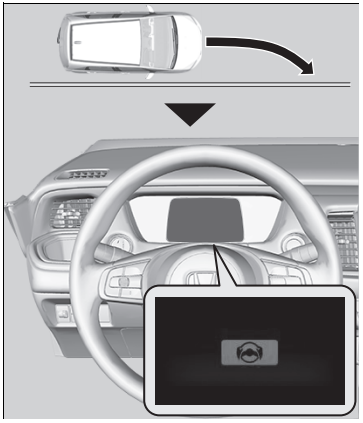
■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.

■ How the System Works



The front camera located at the top of the windscreen monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or oncoming vehicles.
If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or oncoming vehicles when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.
In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345

As a visual alert, message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

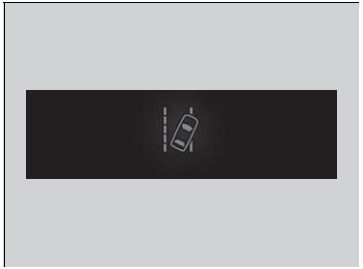
The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or an oncoming vehicle.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

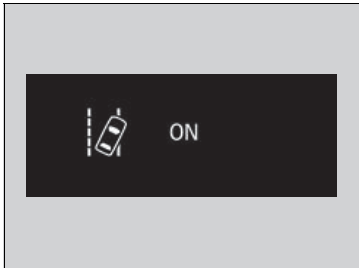
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Wide View Camera P. 494

 * Not available on all models

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the warning sound is given only.



After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations P. 483

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Early** from the customized options using the driver information interface* or audio/information screen*, the message below will appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or oncoming vehicle. If you have selected **Normal** or **Delayed**, however, the message will only appear if the vehicle is about to cross over the outer edge of the pavement or oncoming vehicle.

Settings* P. 154
Customized Features P. 345



* Not available on all models

Continued

Road Departure Mitigation System

In the following case, a beeper sounds, a message related to the ACC with Low Speed Follow appears on the driver information interface, and the braking function controlled by the Road Departure Mitigation system is cancelled.

- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).

How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
  The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
  ▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel border.
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.

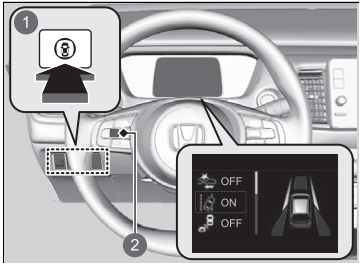
Indicators P. 106

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Continued

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off



1 Safety Support Switch
2 Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ The message appears on the driver information interface when the system becomes on or off.

The Road Departure Mitigation system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

Driver Information Interface P. 140

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (amber), vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, and safety support (amber) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white lines (or yellow lines).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

Continued

■ **Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White lines (or yellow lines) are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ **Vehicle conditions**
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

■ **Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles**
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of a oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

Continued

■ **Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation**

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

■ **With Little Chance of a Collision**

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

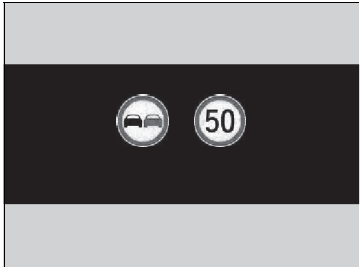
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exists motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

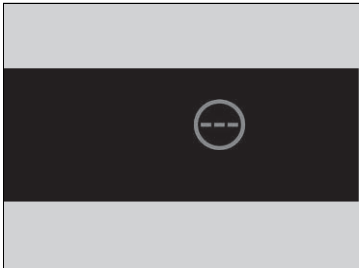
The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

Continued

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.



Traffic Sign Recognition System

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
Front Wide View Camera P. 494

Traffic Sign Recognition System

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.

- **Settings*** P. 154
- **Customized Features** P. 345

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

- **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 490

The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. Just after entering a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, Traffic Sign Recognition System may not work correctly.

- **Change Units** P. 152
- **Settings*** P. 154
- **Customized Features** P. 345

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may not be able to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

■ Roadway conditions

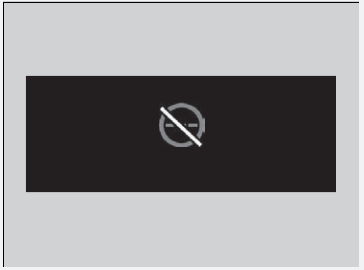
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- Abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ **The position or the condition of the traffic sign**
- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged signs.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ **Other conditions**
- When you are driving at a high speed.

Continued

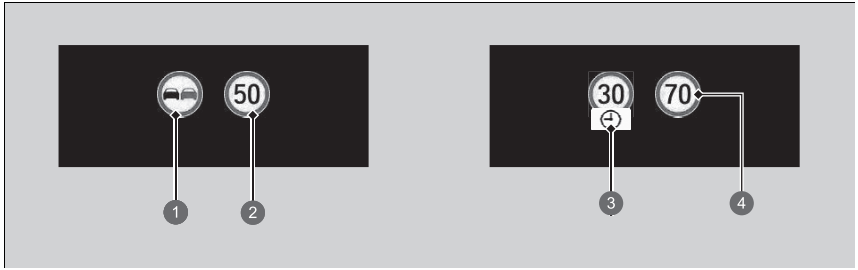
The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

■ Signs Displayed on the Gauge

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected. The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the right half of the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on weather (snow, etc.) or specific period of time can appear on either side.



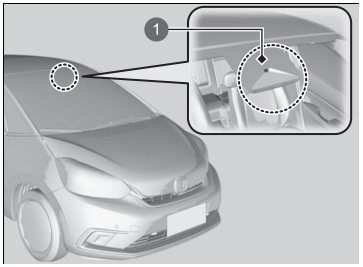
❶ Overtaking Prohibition Sign*1
❷ Speed Limit Sign
❸ Additional Speed Limit Sign Based on Conditions*2
❹ Speed Limit Sign

Depending on situation, *1 can be replaced with *2, or *2 can appear on the right side.

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Traffic Sign Recognition System, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



❶ Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Wide View Camera

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

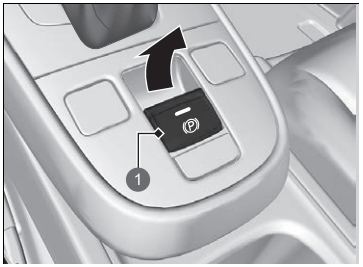
If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Brake System

■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch

■ To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.
➡ **Jump Starting** P. 610

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

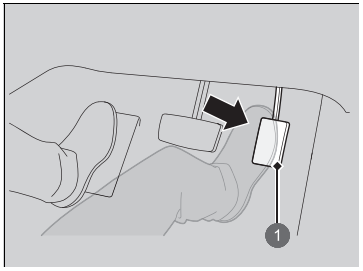
- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is (red) on.

➡ **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 498

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

❶ Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in [P] or [N].

Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

Continued

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into [P].

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off the automatic brake hold system.
▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Power system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (red)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➔ **Brake Assist System** P. 504
➔ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 503

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply regenerative braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and shifting to position B.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Continued

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



1. Automatic Brake Hold Button
2. Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

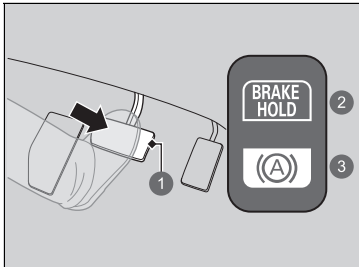
⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ Activating the system

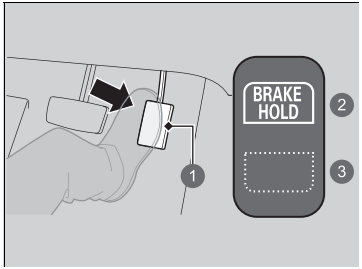


Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in P or R.

- The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

❶ Brake Pedal
❷ On
❸ Comes On

■ Cancelling the system



Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

- The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

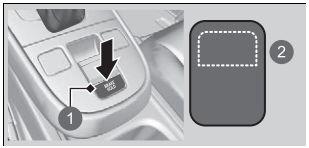
❶ Accelerator Pedal
❷ On
❸ Goes Off

Continued

■ **The system automatically cancels when:**
- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ **The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:**
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

■ **Turning off the automatic brake hold system**



1 Automatic Brake Hold Button
2 Goes Off

While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.
▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.
When Stopped P. 506

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the power system is off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

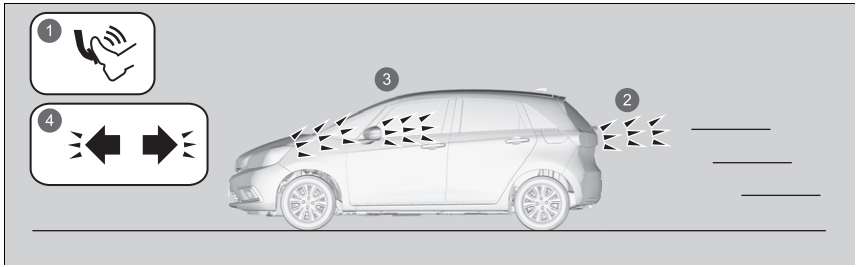
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ **When the system activates:**



1. Hard Braking
2. Brake Lights Come On
3. Hazard Warning Lights Flash
4. Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
3. Change the transmission to P.
4. Turn off the power system.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to P before the vehicle stops completely.

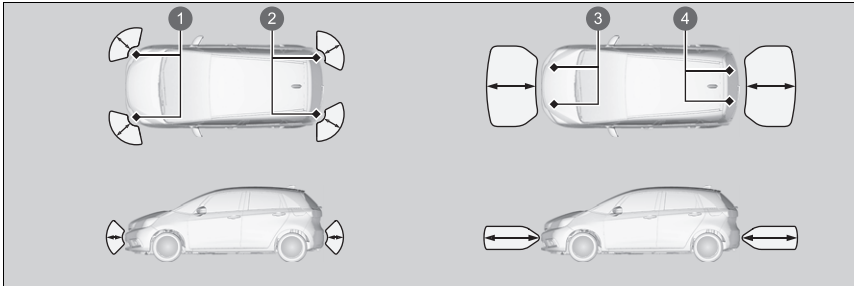
When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



❶ Front Corner Sensors
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

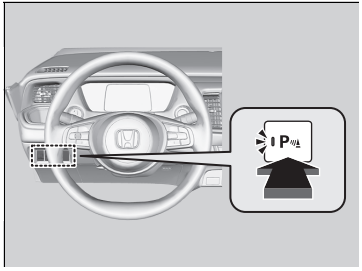
The system may not sense:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

 * Not available on all models

■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

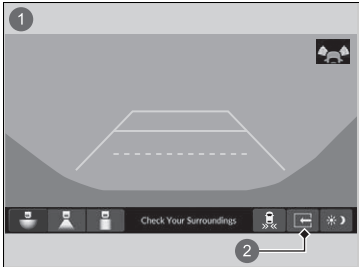
The front corner, rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

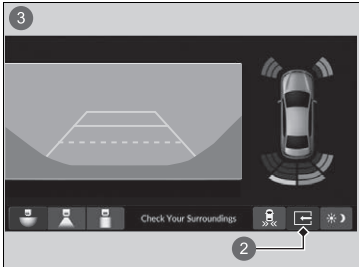
The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

Continued

Models with multi-view rear camera

■ Screen Operation



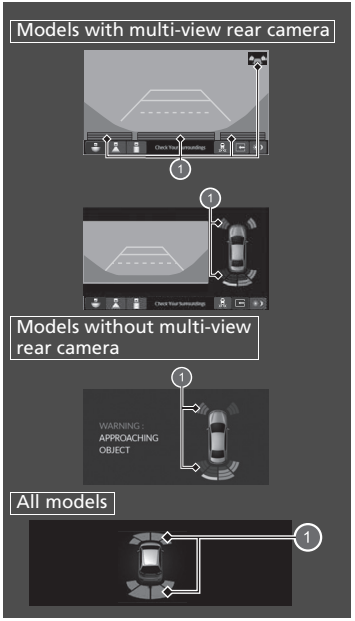


❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab
❸ Split View On

The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:

- If the parking sensor system is turned off.
- If there is a malfunction in the system.

■ **When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter**

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface/ Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	About 110-60 cm	Yellow*1 Comes on	
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Amber Comes on	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Red Comes on	

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.
❶ Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

⚠WARNING

Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

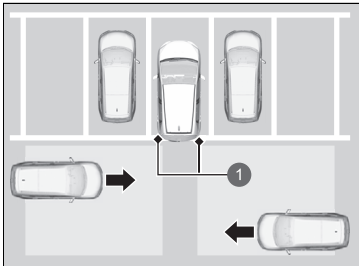
Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 517
  - **Customized Features** P. 345
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

1 Radar sensors:
Underneath the rear bumper corners.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h (6 mph) and 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.

▶Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

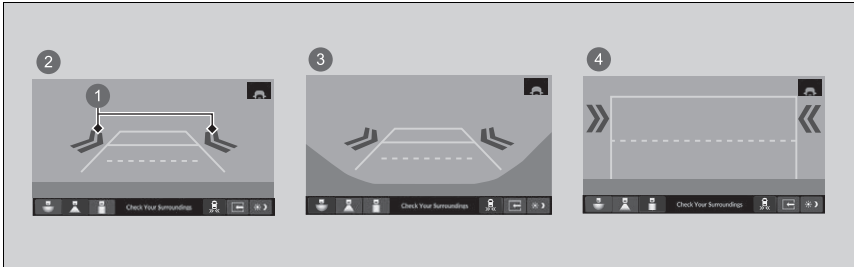
Cross Traffic Monitor*

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

* Not available on all models

Continued

When the System Detects a Vehicle



1 Arrow Icon
2 Normal View
3 Wide View
4 Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

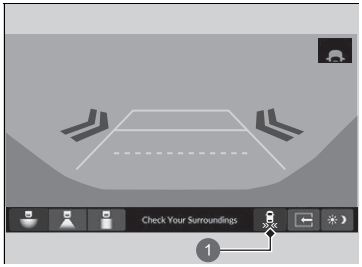
When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the [icon] on the lower right changes to [icon] in amber when the transmission is in [R], mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the [icon] comes on when the transmission is in [R], there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in [R], there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



❶ Icon

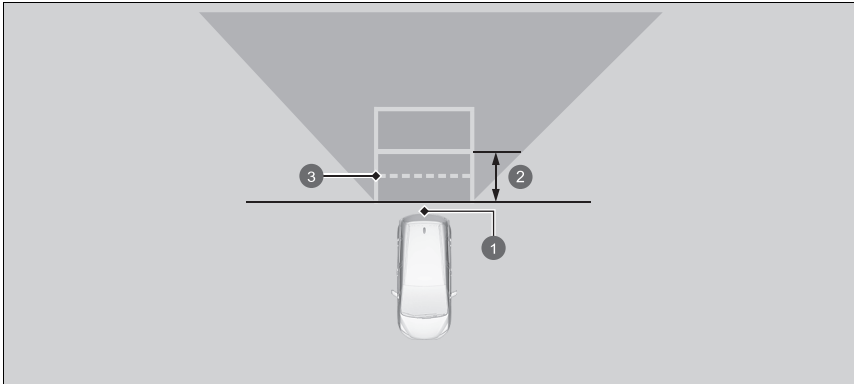
Tap to turn the system on and off. The indicator comes on with the system on. You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 345

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



1. Camera
2. Approx. 1 m (39 inches)
3. Tailgate open range

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

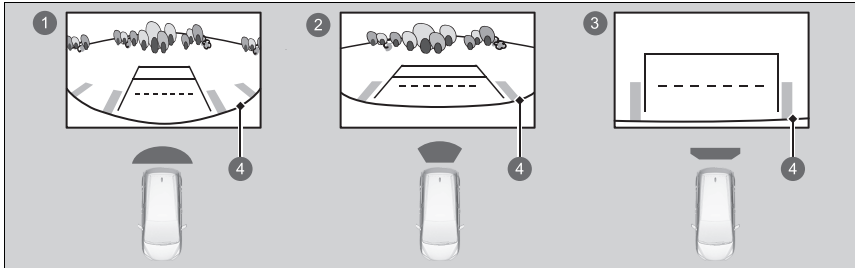
The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

 * Not available on all models

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



❶ Wide View Mode
❷ Normal View Mode
❸ Top Down View Mode
❹ Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power system, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
Customized Features P. 345

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Except Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan and Tunisian models

EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan and Tunisian models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher.
If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.
The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

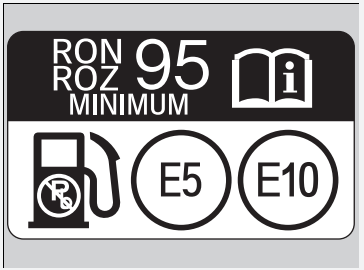
■ Fuel tank capacity: 40 L (8.8 Imp gal)

Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

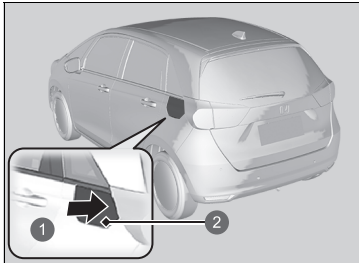
- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems



Oxygenated Fuels

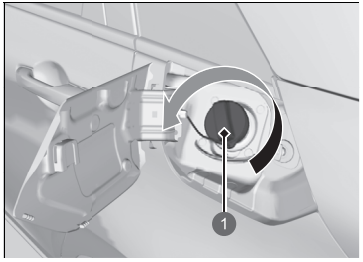
Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or other compounds. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN 228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.

How to Refuel



❶ Press
❷ Fuel Fill Door

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the power system.
3. Unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch or lock tab.
▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.



❶ Cap

5. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

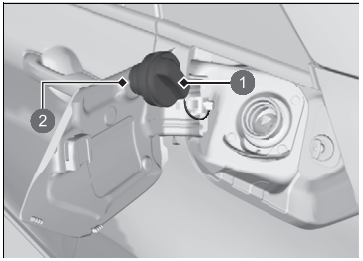
The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

Continued



❶ Cap
❷ Holder

6. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
7. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
8. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the Maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 535

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

Recommended Engine Oil P. 546

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Miles driven	÷	Gallons of fuel	=	Miles per Gallon		

* Not available on all models

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



Before Performing Maintenance
- Inspection and Maintenance 526
- Safety When Performing Maintenance 527
- Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 528
- About Your Maintenance Service 529

Service Reminder System* 530
Maintenance Schedule* 535
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
- Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet.. 543
- Opening the Bonnet 544
- Recommended Engine Oil 546
- Oil Check 549
- Adding Engine Oil 550
- Cooling System 551
- Transmission Fluid 554
- Brake Fluid 555
- Refilling Window Washer Fluid 556
- Fuel Filter 557

Replacing Light Bulbs 558
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 563
Checking and Maintaining Tyres
- Checking Tyres 568
- Wear Indicators 569
- Tyre Service Life 569
- Tyre and Wheel Replacement 570
- Tyre Rotation 571
- Snow Traction Devices 572

12-Volt Battery 573
Remote Transmitter Care
- Replacing the Button Battery 579

Climate Control System Maintenance 580
Cleaning
- Interior Care 584
- Exterior Care 586

Accessories and Modifications 589

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule*** P. 535

■ Types of Inspection and Maintenance

■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  ➡ **Brake Fluid** P. 555
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 568
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➡ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 558
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 563

 * Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book*.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power mode is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

About Your Maintenance Service

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the driver information interface when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service book* that came with your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

Service Reminder System* P. 530

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book* that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 535

About Your Maintenance Service

Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

* Not available on all models

Service Reminder System*

Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON.

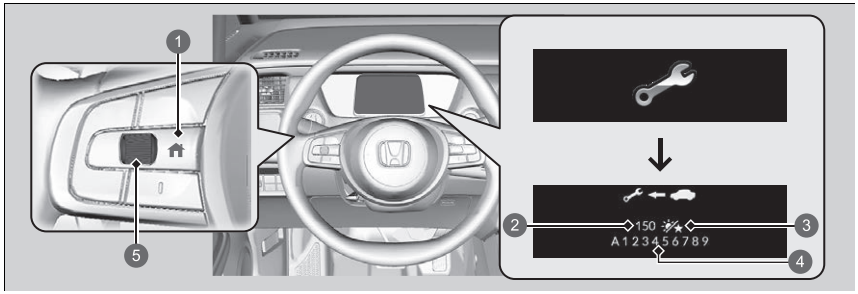
Service Reminder System*

You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the driver information interface.

* Not available on all models

Displaying the Service Reminder Information

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the service reminder information screen. The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Remaining Days
❸ Day Icon
❹ Maintenance Item Code(s)
❺ Left Selector Wheel

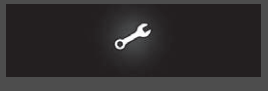
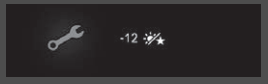
The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the service reminder information.

Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.

Continued

Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Icon	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
Service Due Soon 		One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	The remaining days will be counted down per day.
Service Due Now 		One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.
Service Over Due 		The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder system.

■ Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the driver information interface are in code and icon. For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service book* that came with your vehicle.

■ Availability of the Service Reminder System

Even if the service reminder information appears on the driver information interface while pressing the (home) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service book* that came with your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.

Availability of the Service Reminder System

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

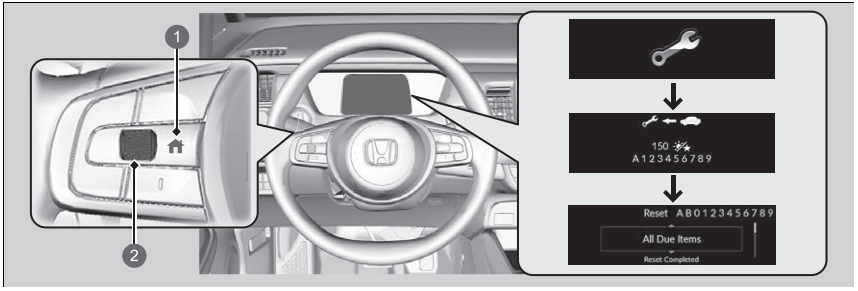
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the service reminder information screen.
5. Press and hold the left selector wheel until the reset mode is displayed.
6. Roll the left selector wheel select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
8. Repeat from step 5 for other items you wish to reset.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

Models with colour audio
You can reset also the service reminder system information display using the driver information interface.
Settings* P. 154

Models with Display Audio
You can reset also the service reminder system information display using the audio/information screen.
Customized Features P. 345

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance Schedule*

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Except Ukrainian models without Service Book

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil	Normal	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km (3,000 miles) or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	Every 20,000 km (12,500 miles) or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km (18,500 miles)									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km (75,000 miles)									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)									

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km x 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		miles x 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km (62,500 miles) or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	Normal		150,000 km (93,500 miles) or 6 years									
	Severe		75,000 km (47,000 miles) or 3 years									
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Replace fuel filter	Normal		Every 180,000km (112,500miles)									
	Severe		Every 110,000km (68,500miles)*1									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Check expiry date for TRK bottle			Every year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles)									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots Suspension components			Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Continued

Ukrainian models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Replace engine oil	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 6 months												
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe	Every 7,500 km or 1 year												
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km												
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km												
Replace spark plugs		Every 120,000 km (Inspect: 15,000 km)												
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years												
Replace transmission fluid		Every 80,000km or 4years												
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace fuel filter	Normal	Every 180,000 km												
	Severe	Every 105,000 km*2												
Replace brake fluid		Every 3 years												
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle		Every year												
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)		Every 15,000km												
Check light alignment		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard operation)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Visually inspect the following items:														
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

Models without Service Book

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

Maintenance Schedule*

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
A. Less than 8 km (5 miles), or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperatures per trip.
B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

* Not available on all models

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Except Ukrainian models

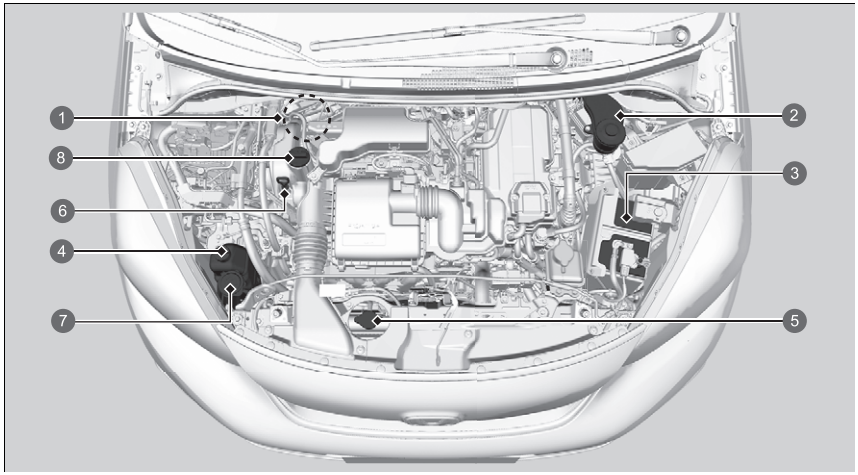
	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)			

Continued

Ukrainian models

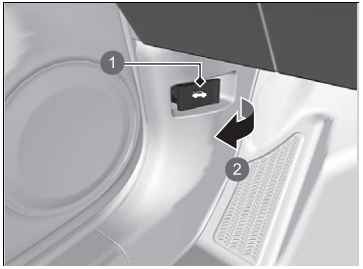
	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
15,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
30,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
45,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
75,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
90,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
105,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
135,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
150,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			
165,000 km (or 132 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 144 Mo.)			
195,000 km (or 156 Mo.)			

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



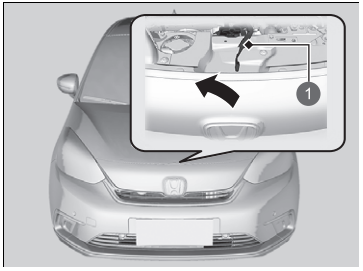
1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
2. Brake Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)
3. 12-volt Battery
4. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
5. Radiator Cap
6. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
7. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
8. Engine Oil Fill Cap

Opening the Bonnet



1 Bonnet Release Handle
2 Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



1 Lever

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

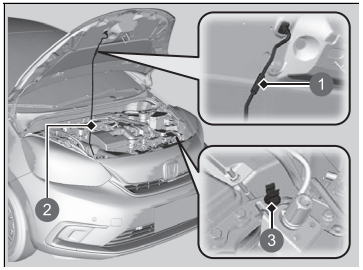
Opening the Bonnet

NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



❶ Grip
❷ Support Rod
❸ Clamp

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm (12 inches) and let the bonnet close.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter*.

➡ **Adding Engine Oil** P. 550

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Models with gasoline particulate filter

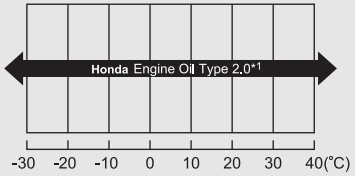
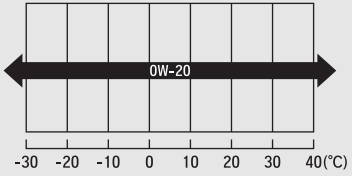
You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

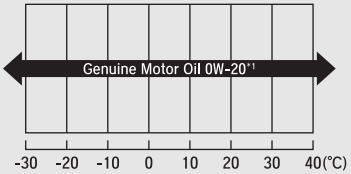
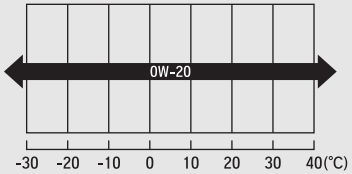
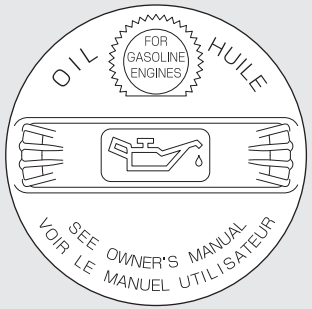
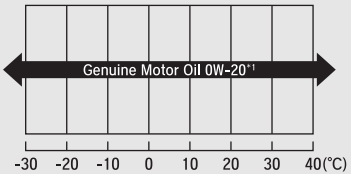
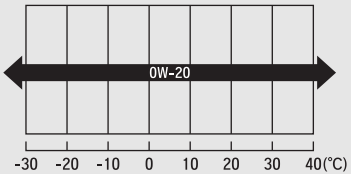
* Not available on all models

European and Ukrainian models

Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0*1 	• ACEA C5 

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Except European and Ukrainian models

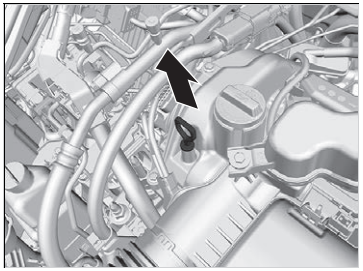
Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil*1 	• ACEA C5 
Without Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil*1 	• API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • ACEA A5/B5 

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

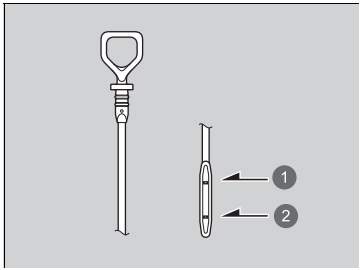
Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

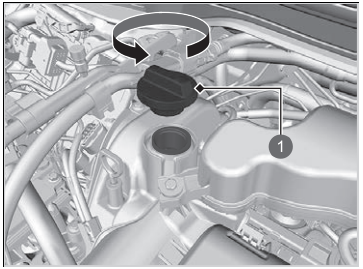
❶ Upper Mark
❷ Lower Mark

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles.
Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

Adding Engine Oil



❶ Engine Oil Fill Cap

1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

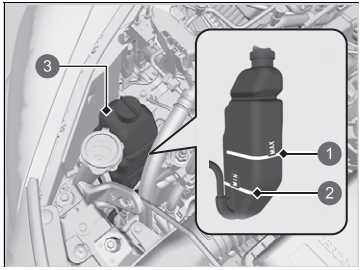
Cooling System

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Cooling System

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

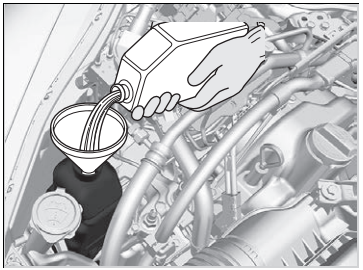
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

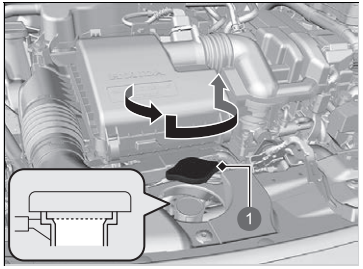
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Continued



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

■ Radiator



❶ Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anti-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anti-clockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

■ Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 535

Do not attempt to check or change the transmission fluid yourself.

Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

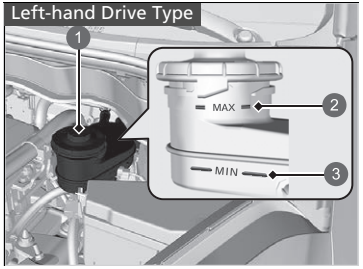
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

* Not available on all models

Brake Fluid

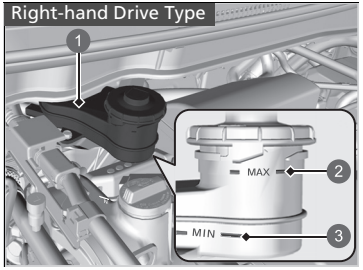
Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Brake Fluid

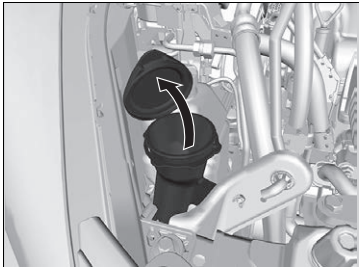
NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir.
Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.
Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.
Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Fuel Filter

Models with service reminder system

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

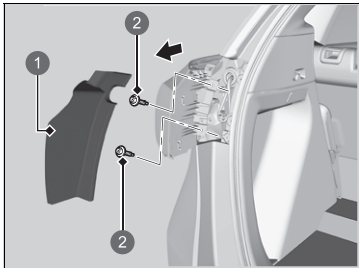
The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

* Not available on all models

Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

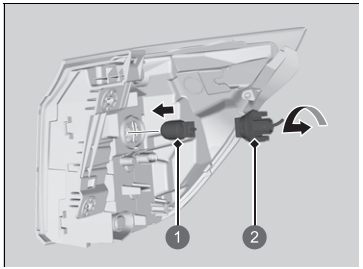
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1. Remove the cover.
2. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the bolts.
3. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.

1 Cover
2 Bolt



4. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
5. Insert a new bulb.

1 Bulb
2 Socket

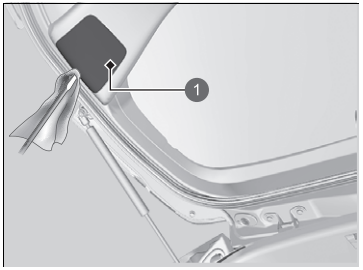
Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake/taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

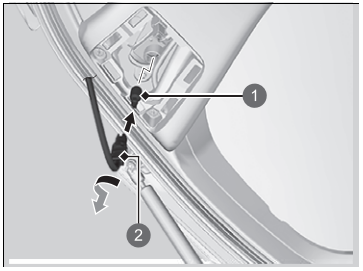
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Back-Up Light: 16 W



1. Cover

1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



1. Bulb
2. Socket

2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Fog Light

Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

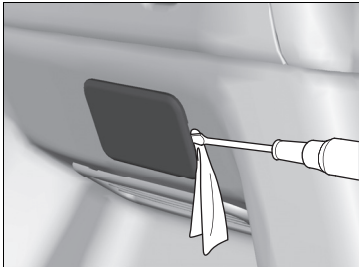
Other Light Bulbs

■ Luggage Area Light Bulbs

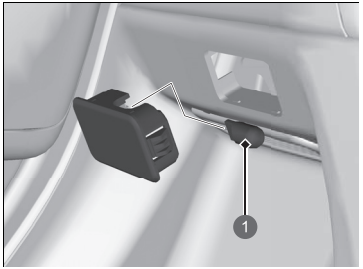
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

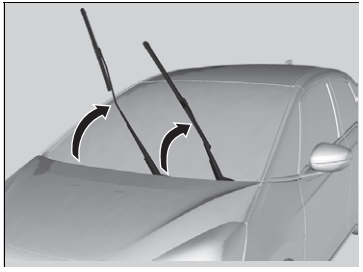


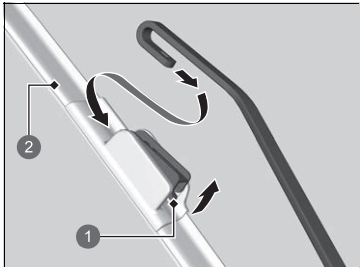
1 Bulb

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber





❶ Tab
❷ Holder

1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

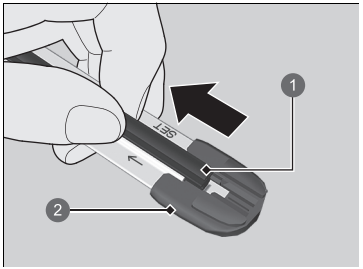
2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

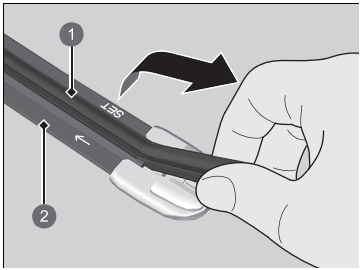
Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Continued



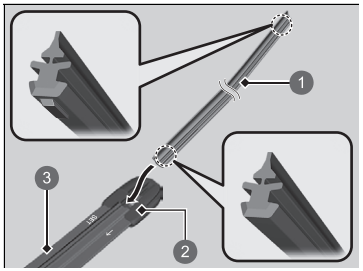
1 Blade
2 End Cap at the bottom

3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



1 Blade
2 Holder

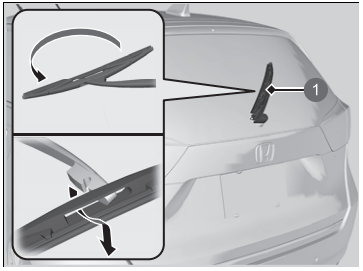
4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



1 Blade
2 Cap
3 Holder

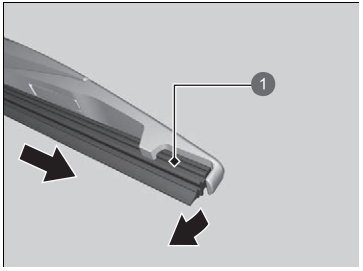
5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
8. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

1 Wiper Arm



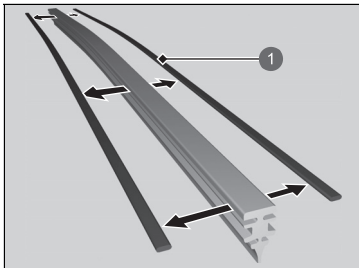
3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

1 Blade

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

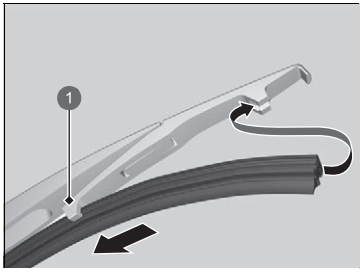
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.



4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

1 Retainer



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

1 Holder

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 569
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

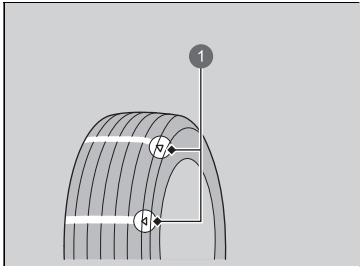
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.
➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 423

Wear Indicators



1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

High speed driving

Models without 185/60R16 tyres

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h/100 mph), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	185/60R15 88H
Pressure	Front: 260 kPa (2.6 bar) 38 psi Rear: 250 kPa (2.5 bar) 36 psi

Tyre Size	185/55R16 87H
Pressure	Front: 270 kPa (2.7 bar) 39 psi Rear: 260 kPa (2.6 bar) 38 psi

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

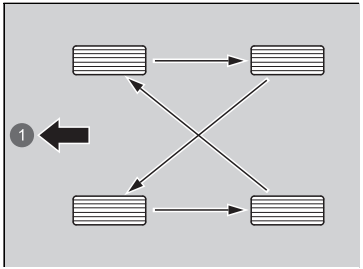
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

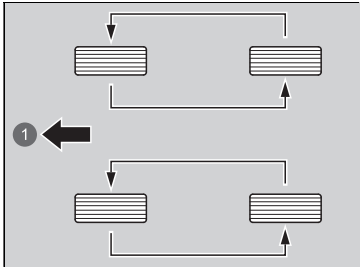
■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

1 Front

■ Tyres with rotation marks

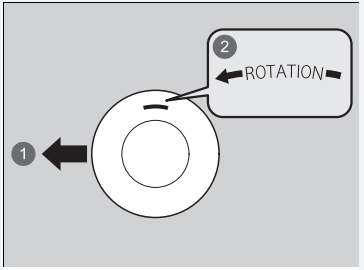


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

1 Front

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



1 Front
2 Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

➡ **Deflation Warning System** P. 423

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:
- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
185/60R15 88H	**RUD-matic classic 48478**
185/55R16 87H	**RUD-matic classic 48479**
185/60R16 86H	**RUD-matic classic 48482**

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EU Directive for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

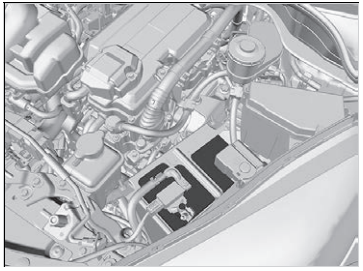
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
  Reactivating the audio system P. 240
- The clock resets.
  Clock P. 166
  Clock Setup P. 304

Right-hand Drive Type

- The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  Immobilizer System Indicator P. 118

12-Volt Battery

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

⚠WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Continued

12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

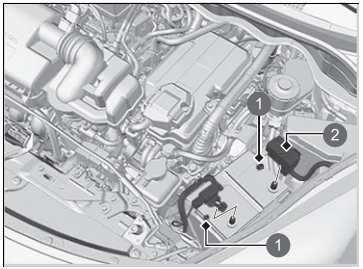
12-Volt Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Safety Support (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System may come on along with a message in the meter when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

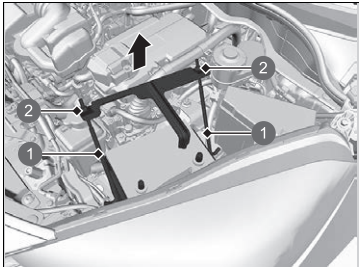
When you remove and replace the 12-volt battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

Maintenance Safety P. 527
Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 573



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Open the bonnet.
2. Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (–) terminal.
3. Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.

1 Nut
2 Cover



4. Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.

1 Stay
2 Nut

Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

NOTICE

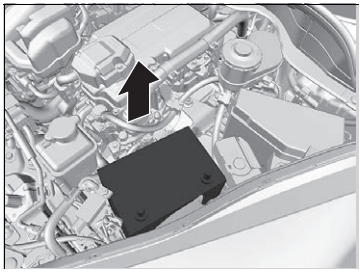
An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.



6. Take out the battery carefully.

Battery Label

Example



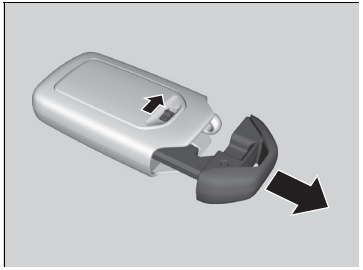
Battery Label

DANGER

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

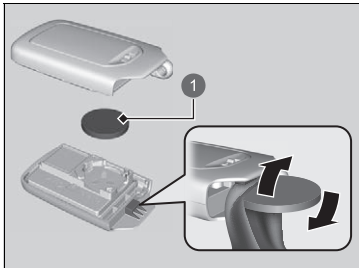
Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
- ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

❶ Battery

Replacing the Button Battery

⚠⚠WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

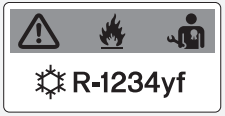
Climate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:



: Caution

: Flammable Refrigerant

: Requires a qualified technician to service

: Air Conditioning System

Safety Labels P. 102
Specifications P. 634

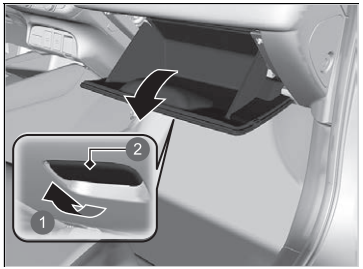
Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 535

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.

❶ Pull
❷ Handle

Dust and Pollen Filter

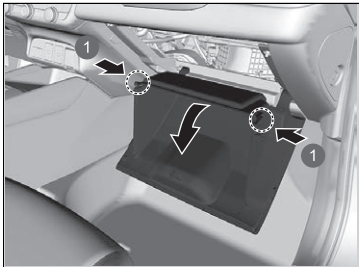
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

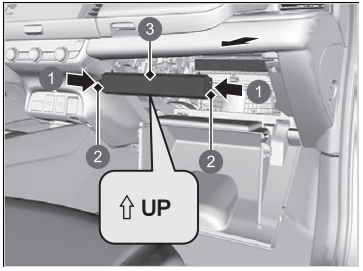
* Not available on all models

Continued



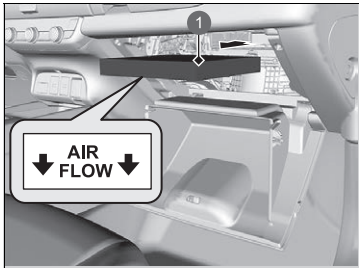
2. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
3. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

❶ Tabs



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.

❶ Push
❷ Tabs
❸ Cover



1 Dust and Pollen Filter

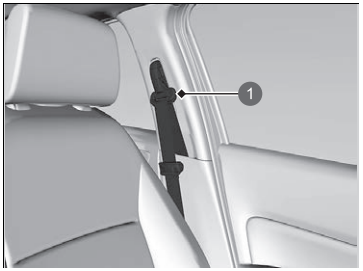
5. Remove the filter from the case.
6. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



❶ Loop

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor.

■ Floor Mats*

The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, position it properly.
Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

■ Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

■ Maintaining Water-repellent Seat*

Remove dirt with a damp cloth. Wipe away any residual water with a clean, dry cloth.
The use of detergent reduces the effectiveness of the water repellent.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

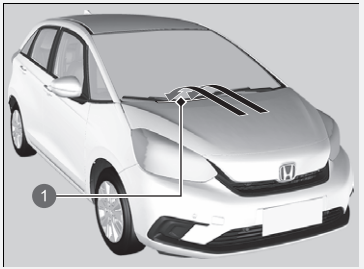
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



1 Air Intake Vents

Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels*

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

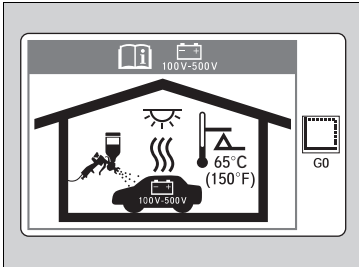
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

■ Painting the Vehicle



High temperature may damage the high-voltage battery used to power the electric motor.
When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65°C.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Fuses P. 623
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

⚠WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

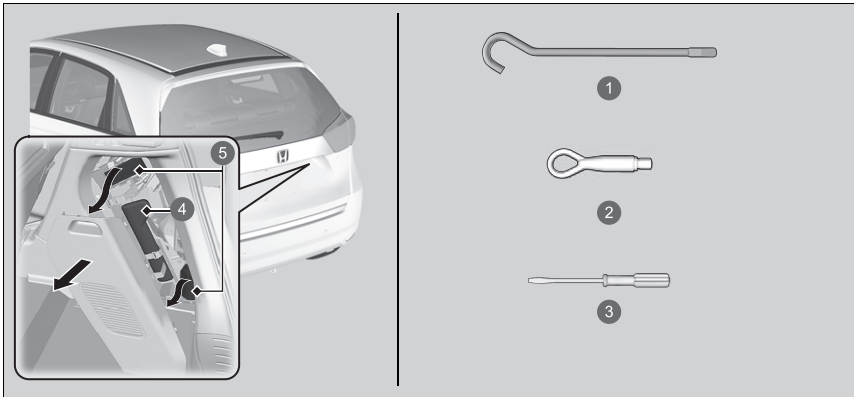
Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools
Types of Tools 592
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 593
Power System Won't Start
Checking the Procedure 607
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak .. 608
Emergency Power System Off 609
Jump Starting 610
Shift Lever Does Not Move 613
Overheating
How to Handle Overheating 614
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears 616
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On 616
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 617
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 618
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On 619
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On .. 620
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks .. 621
If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears 622
If the Power System Indicator Comes On .. 622
Fuses
Fuse Locations 623
Inspecting and Changing Fuses 628
Emergency Towing 629
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door 630
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate .. 632

Types of Tools



❶ Jack Handle Bar*
❷ Detachable Towing Hook
❸ Flat-tip Screwdriver
❹ Tool Bag
❺ Tyre Repair Kit

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

* Not available on all models

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

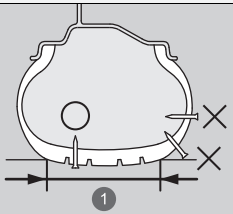
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery ground and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into P.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	Yes
Larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch)	No

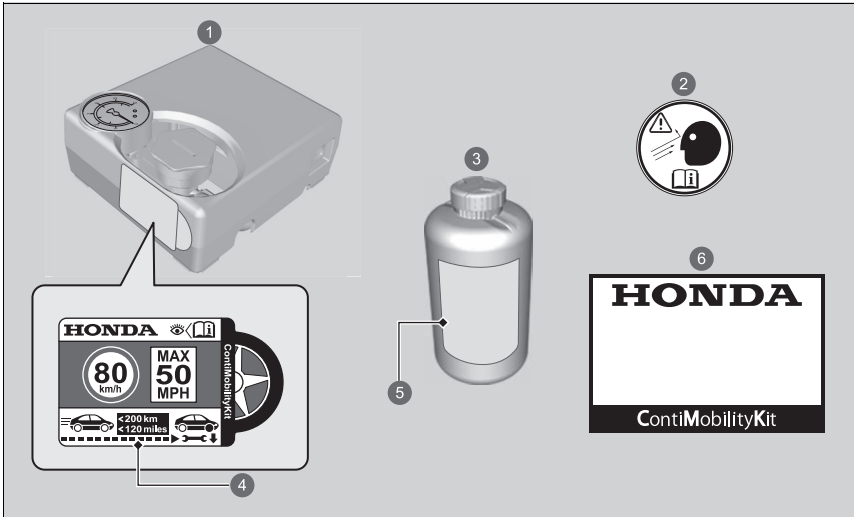
1 Contact Area

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Continued

■ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

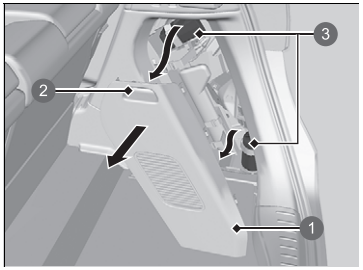


1. Air Compressor
2. Wheel Label
3. Sealant Bottle
4. Speed Restriction Label
5. Expiration Date
6. Handling Manual

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Speed restriction label are applied to the side of temporary tyre repair kit.

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

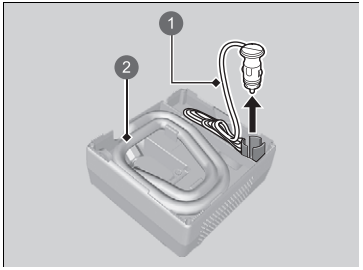


❶ Lid
❷ Handle
❸ Tyre Repair Kit

1. Remove the lid on right side of the luggage area by pulling the handle lightly, then take the kit out from inside.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

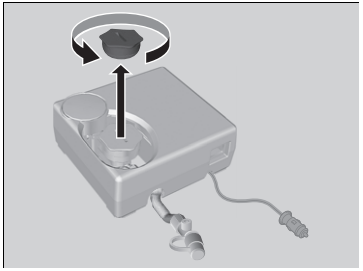
Continued

■ Injecting Sealant and Air



❶ Plug Cord
❷ Air Compressor Hose

1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.



2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

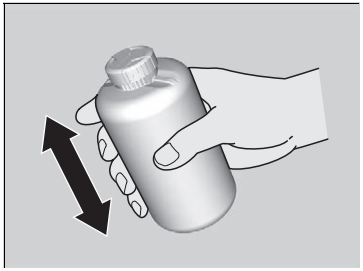
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

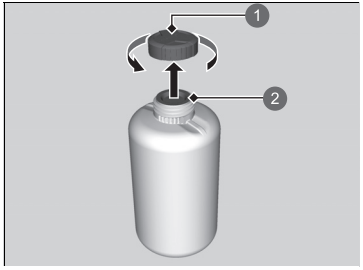
Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it by keeping the bottle in the passenger compartment before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



3. Shake the bottle well.



4. Remove the bottle cap.
▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.

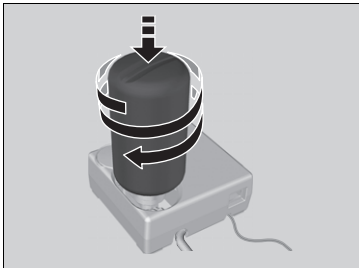
❶ Bottle Cap
❷ Not Removed

Injecting Sealant and Air

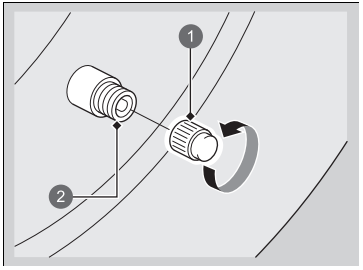
Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.

Continued

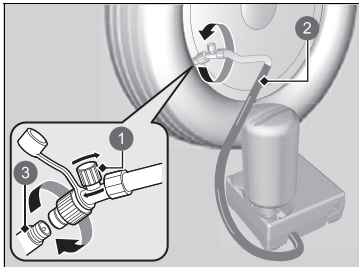


5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
► Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.

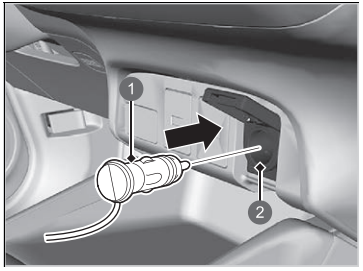


6. Unscrew the valve cap.

❶ Valve Cap
❷ Valve



❶ Air Valve
❷ Air Compressor Hose
❸ Valve



❶ Plug
❷ Accessory Power Socket

7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.
▶ Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 231

9. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 101

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

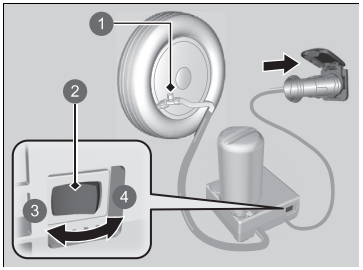
Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.

Continued



1 Air Valve
2 Switch
3 OFF
4 ON

10. Turn on the air compressor and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
▶ If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.

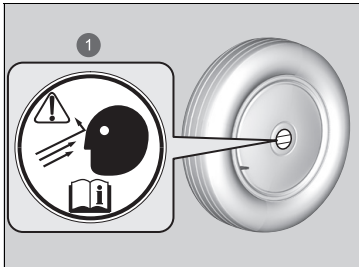
12. Unplug the plug from the accessory power socket.

13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
▶ Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

Injecting Sealant and Air

Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.



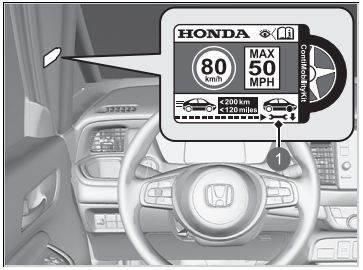
1 Wheel Label

14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

15. Store the tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

Continued

■ Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.
2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or three to ten kilometres (two to six miles).
   ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

❶ Speed Restriction Label

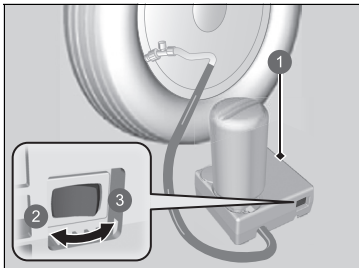
Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.



1 Air Compressor
2 OFF
3 ON

4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

5. If the air pressure is
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air and continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 629
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  ➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 604

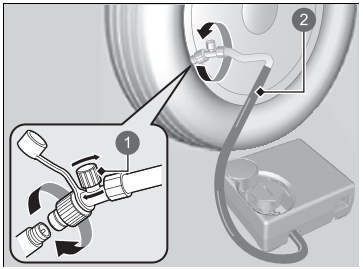
And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
▶ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres (120 miles).

6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Continued

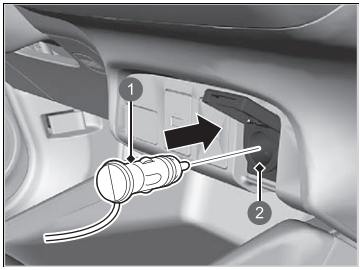
■ Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



1. Air Valve
2. Hose

1. Take the air compressor out of the luggage area.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



1. Plug
2. Accessory Power Socket

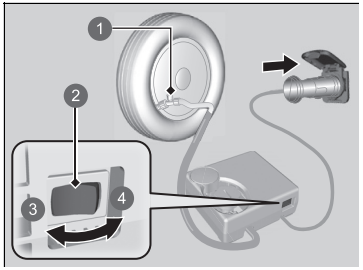
5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
   ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
   ➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 231
6. Turn on the vehicle's power system.
   ➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 101

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.



1. Air Valve
2. Switch
3. OFF
4. ON

7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
- ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
- ▶ If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.

8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

9. Turn off the kit.
- ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.

10. Turn on the vehicle's power system off, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.

11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

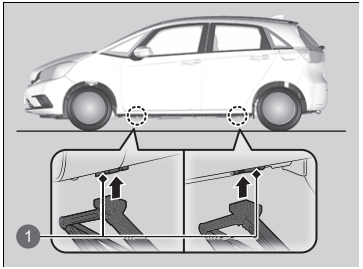
12. Store the air compressor in the luggage area.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



1 Jacking Points

Checking the Procedure

When the (Ready) indicator does not come on and does not appear on the driver information interface, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checking the Procedure

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.
Jump Starting P. 610

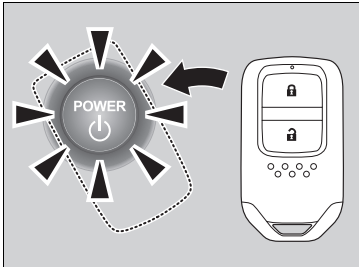
Do not hold the **POWER** button for more than 15 seconds.

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.	appears.	**Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 124
	appears. ▶Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.	**If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 608
	The (Power System) indicator comes on.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Check the brightness of the interior lights.	The interior lights are dim or do not come on at all.	Have the 12-volt battery checked by a dealer.
	The interior lights come on normally.	Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 628
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Put the transmission into P.
Check the power system starting procedure. Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again.		**Turning on the Power** P. 397
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	**Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 118

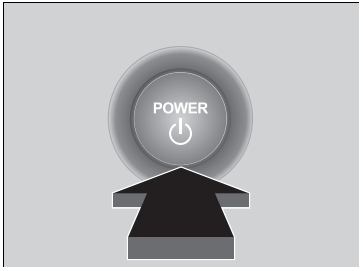
If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the [key] appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the [car] (Ready) indicator does not come on. Turn on the power system as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
▶ The **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **POWER** button changes from flashing to on.
▶ If you do not depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

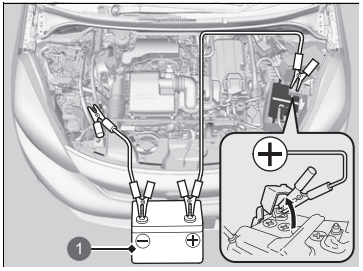
The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the power system is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **POWER** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Emergency Power System Off

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.
If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1 Booster Battery

1. Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

Jump Starting

⚠WARNING

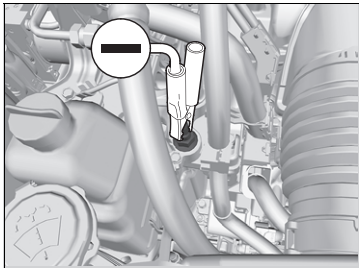
A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

Jump Starting

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

Continued

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's stud bolt.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

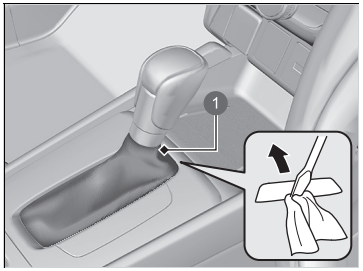
What to Do After the Engine Starts

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, VSA OFF, Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System and Safety Support Indicator (Amber) may come on along with a message in the gauge when you turn the power system on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Shift Lever Does Not Move

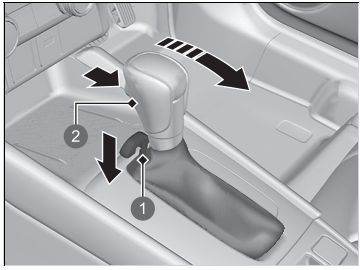
Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

■ Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the cover as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

❶ Cover



4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

❶ Shift Lock Release Slot
❷ Release Button

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- appears on the driver information interface.
- appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ Appears on the Driver Information Interface

appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 124

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.

▶ Put the transmission into P, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.

▶ If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ Appears on the Driver Information Interface

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

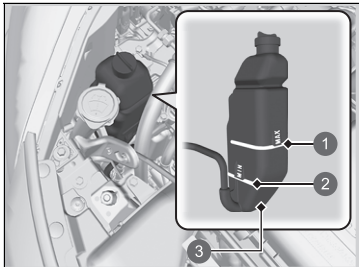
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



❶ **MAX**
❷ **MIN**
❸ Reserve Tank

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once [icon] on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on.
If [icon] does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears



■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the power system and let it sit for approximately three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

➔ **Oil Check** P. 549

3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure warning.

▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.

▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the power system and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not being charged.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the power system. The power system uses the 12-volt battery to activate. You may not be able to turn the power system on again if you have turned it off with this indicator on.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (30 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On
P. 620

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On


(Red)


(Amber)

■**If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 496

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving
  Put the transmission into P.

- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink**

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

Deflation Warning System P. 423

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on**

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears



■ **Reasons for the symbol to appear**

Appears when the engine oil level is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the symbol appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.

2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the power system and let it sit for about three minutes.

2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

▶ Add oil as necessary.

➡ **Oil Check** P. 549

If the Power System Indicator Comes On



■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the hybrid system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil level can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

If the symbol appears again, stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

Fuse Locations

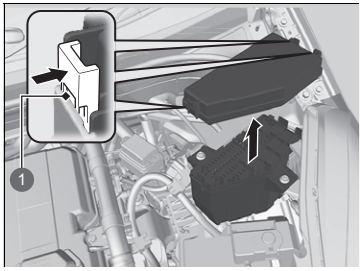
If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box

■ Fuse Box A

Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



1 Tabs

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Wiper	30 A
2	–	–	–
3		Hazard	10 A
4		Stop	10 A
5		PCU EWP	15 A
6		EVTC	(20 A)
7		IMG	10 A
8		IGP	15 A
9		IG Coil	(15 A)
10		DBW	15 A
11		ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
12		Main Fan	30 A
13	–	–	–
14		Water Pump	30 A
15		Battery Sensor	7.5 A
16	–	–	–
17		Back Up FI-ECU	10 A
18		Horn	10 A
19		Sub Audio*	(7.5 A)
20		Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)

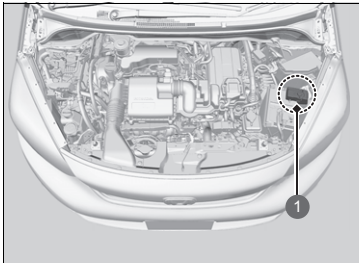
		Circuit Protected	Amps
21		Back Up Main	(15 A)
22		Back Up	10 A
23		Sub Fan	(30 A)
24		ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
25		IGP2 Sub	7.5 A
26		LAF	10 A
27	–	–	–
28	–	–	–
29	–	–	–
30	–	–	–
31	–	–	–
32	–	–	–
33	–	–	–

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Fuse Box B

Located near the ⊕ terminal of the 12-volt battery.
Have a dealer inspect and replace the fuse.



❶ Fuse Box

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

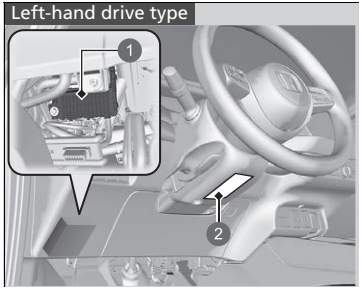
		Circuit Protected	Amps
a		Battery Main	170 A
b		Battery Main (Fan)	60 A
c		Battery Main (ENG)	80 A
d		Battery Main (HEV)	60 A
e		EPS	70 A
f		ESB	40 A

Driver Side Interior Fuse Box

Type A

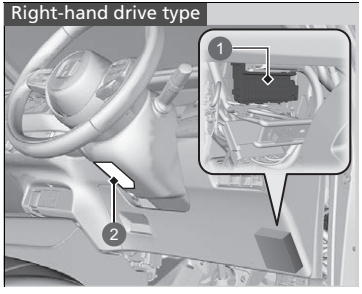
Located under the dashboard.

Left-hand drive type



❶ Fuse Box
❷ Fuse Label

Right-hand drive type



❶ Fuse Box
❷ Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	7.5 A
2		ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
3	–	–	–
4	–	–	–
5		Option	10 A
6		Option 2	10 A
7		Meter	10 A
8		Fuel Pump	15 A
9		AIRCON	10 A
10	–	–	–
11		MON	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
14	RR L	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
15	AS	Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17		Transmission	(10 A)
18	–	–	–
19		–	(20 A)
20		Starter Cut Relay	7.5 A
21		ACG	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	(7.5 A)
23		Rear Fog Light	(10 A)
24		Option	7.5 A
25		–	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	RR R	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
28	DR	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Power Socket	(20 A)
30		Keyless access	(10 A)
31		USB Charger*	(10 A)
32		Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	–	–	–
34		VSA/ABS	10 A
35		SRS	10 A
36	–	–	–
37		–	(10 A)
38		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
39		–	(10 A)

* Not available on all models

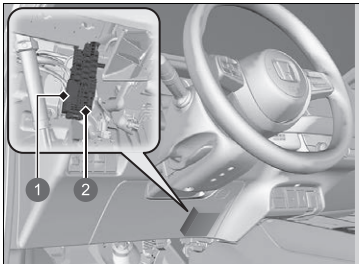
Continued

Left-hand drive type

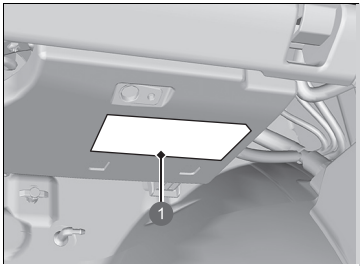
■ Type B

Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box.
Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



❶ Fuse No. 1
❷ Fuse No. 2-25



❶ Fuse Label

Fuse locations are shown on the label under the glove box.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60A
2		IG Main	30A
3		IG Main 2	30A
4		Relay Module 1	30A
5		Relay Module 2	30A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	(40A)
7		Fuse Box Main 3	(40A)
8		A/C PTC1	(40A)
9	–	–	–
10	–	–	–
11		A/C PTC2	(40A)
12		Heater Motor	30A
13		Rear Demister	(30A)
14		SRS	10A
15		IGB	(10A)
16		IGA	(10A)
17		Keyless Access	(10A)
18		–	(20A)
19		–	(10A)
20		Audio Amp*	(20A)
21		Washer	15A
22		Heated Steering*	(15A)
23		IGA2	(15A)
24		Heated Door Mirror	(10A)
25	–	–	–

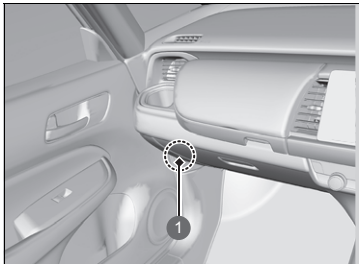
* Not available on all models

Right-hand drive type

Passenger Side Interior Fuse Box

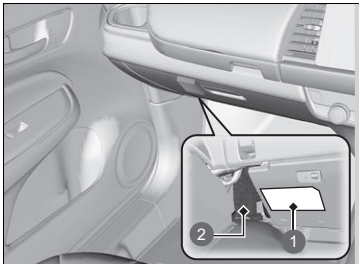
Located under the dashboard.

Only the fuse No. 1 is outside of the fuse box. Replacement of this fuse should be done by a dealer.



❶ Fuse No. 1

The fuses other than No.1 are under the dashboard.



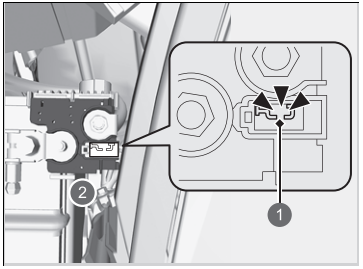
❶ Fuse Label
❷ Fuse No. 2-25

Fuse locations are shown on the label. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Fuse Box Main	60 A
2		IG Main	30 A
3		IG Main 2	30 A
4		Relay Module 1	30 A
5		Relay Module 2	30 A
6		Fuse Box Main 2	(40 A)
7		Fuse Box Main 3	(40 A)
8		A/C PTC1	(40 A)
9	–	–	–
10	–	–	–
11		A/C PTC2	(40 A)
12		Heater Motor	30 A
13		Rear Demister	(30 A)
14		SRS	10 A
15		IGB	(10A)
16		IGA	(10A)
17		Keyless Access	(10A)
18		Super Lock*	(20A)
19		–	(10A)
20		Audio Amp*	(20A)
21		Washer	15A
22		Heated Steering*	(15A)
23		IGA2	(15A)
24		Heated Door Mirror	(10A)
25	–	–	–

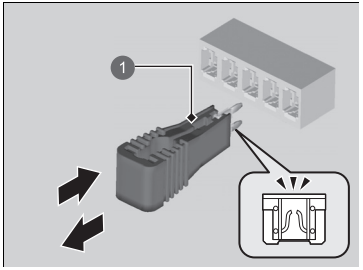
* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Blown
2. Fuse Box on the Battery

1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn the headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the cover on the ⊕ terminal.
3. Check the fuses on the battery in the engine compartment.
   ▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



1. Fuse Puller

4. Remove the fuse box cover.
5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
   ▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with the same specified amperage. Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

Fuse Locations P. 623

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ **Flat bed equipment**
The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ **Wheel lift equipment**
The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flat bed equipment.
Parking Brake P. 496

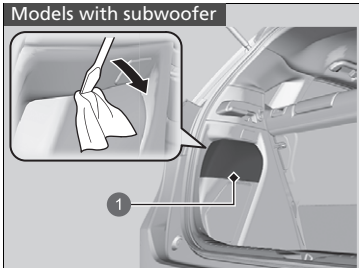
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

What to Do When Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.

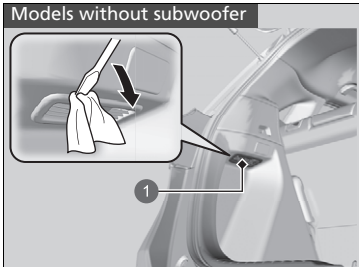
Models with subwoofer



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the left side of the luggage area.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

1 Cover

Models without subwoofer

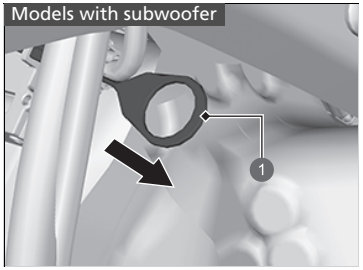


1 Cover

When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

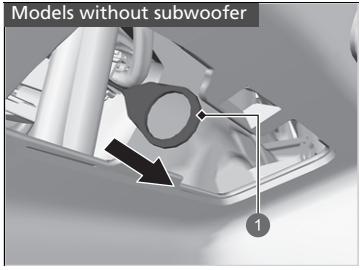
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

Models with subwoofer



1 Release Cord

Models without subwoofer



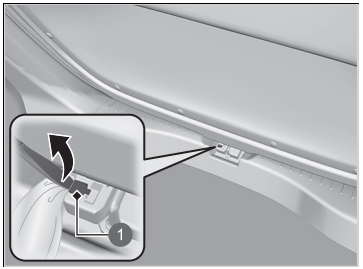
1 Release Cord

3. Pull the release cord to the arrow direction as shown in the image.
▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

4. Open the fuel fill door.
➡ **How to Refuel** P. 521

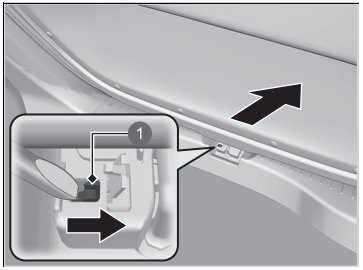
What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1 Lid

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the back of the tailgate.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



1 Lever

2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications..... 634
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number..... 637
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 638

* Not available on all models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Jazz
Curb Weight	1,225 - 1,252 kg (2,701 - 2,760 lbs)
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb*1 See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*2
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb*1 See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb*2

*1: Left-hand drive type
*2: Right-hand drive type

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm (2.87 x 3.52 in)	
Displacement	1,498 cm^3 (91.4 cu-in)	
Compression Ratio	13.5 : 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	DILZKAR7C11H
	DENSO	DXE22HCR11H

■ Fuel

Type	• Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher*1 • EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel*2 • Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher*2
Fuel Tank Capacity	40 L (8.8 Imp gal)

*1: Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan, and Tunisian models
*2: Except Jordanian, Lebanese, Moroccan, and Tunisian models

■ 12-volt Battery

Capacity	32AH(5)/40AH(20)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt)

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (High/Low Beam)	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Front Fog Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake/Taillights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
Rear Fog Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Interior Lights	
Map lights	LED
Ceiling Light	LED
Luggage Area Light	5 W

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	395 - 445 g (13.9 - 15.7 oz)

■ Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1	
Capacity	Change	1.8 L (1.6 Imp qt)

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	**European and Ukrainian models** Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0 ACEA C5 0W-20 **Except European and Ukrainian models, and models with gasoline particulate filter** Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C5 0W-20 **Except European and Ukrainian models, and models without gasoline particulate filter** Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 API service SM or higher grade or ACEA A5/B5 0W-20	
Capacity	Change	3.4 L (3.0 Imp qt)
	Change including filter	3.6 L (3.2 Imp qt)

Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

➡ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 546

* Not available on all models

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	3.85 L (0.85 Imp gal) (change including the remaining 0.45 L (0.10 Imp gal) in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	185/60R15 88H 185/55R16 87H 185/60R16 86H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	15X6J*1 16X6J*2

For the tyre size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

*1: Models with 15 inch wheel
*2: Models with 16 inch wheel

■ Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	90 dB (A)

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

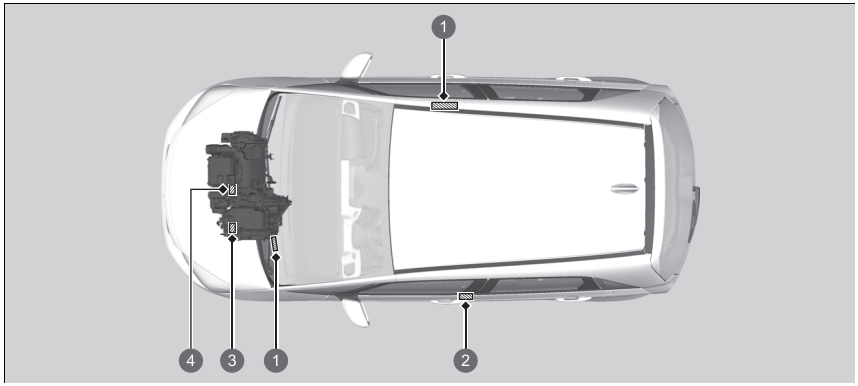
■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,044 mm (159.2 in)*1
		4,090 mm (161.0 in)*2
Width		1,694 mm (66.7 in)*1
		1,725 mm (67.9 in)*2
Height		1,526 mm (60.1 in)*1
		1,556 mm (61.3 in)*2
Wheelbase		2,517 mm (99.1 in)*1
		2,520 mm (99.2 in)*2
Track	Front	1,487 mm (58.5 in)1
		1,498 mm (59.0 in)*2
	Rear	1,474 mm (58.0 in)*1
		1,485 mm (58.5 in)*2

*1: Models without roof rails
*2: Models with roof rails

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

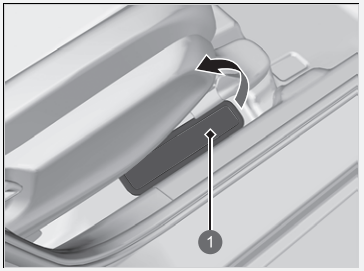
Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



1. Vehicle Identification Number
2. Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number/Engine Number
3. Transmission Number
   Motor Number
4. Engine Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



1. Cover

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Serbian models

BCM
Keyless Access System



KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KVALITET Niš
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета КВАЛИТЕТ Ниш
Joint-stock company for quality testing KVALITET Niš

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTo Broj: P1619035500
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE *No.*

Podnosilac zahteva: *Applicant:* RTTE CONSULTING DOO 11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVICA KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 63/2.7

Vrsta opreme: *Equipment category:* PRIMOPREDAJNI MODUL SISTEMA ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZILU

Oznaka tipa/modela: *Equipment type/model:* HAR0001

Robna marka: *Equipment trademark:* SUMITOMO ELECTRIC

Proizvođač: *Manufacturer:* Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd. Japan

Laboratorija/ispitni izveštaj: *Laboratory/Test report:* Vrednovana dokumentacija *Evaluated documentation:*
Bezbednost/Safety: UL Japan, Inc.: 11370536H-D, 21.11.2016./ UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.: 11724108H-D, 20.09.2017./
EMK/EMC: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.: 11370536H-C, 07.11.2016./ 11724108H-C, 21.09.2017./
RITTo/R&TTE: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.: 11370536H-A, 07.11.2016./ 11724108H-A, 21.09.2017./ 11370536H-B, 07.11.2016./ 11724108H-B, 21.09.2017./

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve 'Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi' (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the 'Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: *Place and date:* Niš, 12.03.2019.
Važi do: *Valid until:* 11.03.2022.
M.P. *Seal:*
Generalni direktor
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su isitovetni sa proizvodima koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija, Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs



Connect with the Best

Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.

EU DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC)

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer:

Name: Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.
Address: 1820 Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka-City, Mie Pref. 513-8631 JAPAN

We declare that the DoC is issued under our sole responsibility and belongs to the following product.

Object of the declaration:

Product Name: Unit Assy, BCM
Model Name: HAR0001
Software Name: Not reconfigurable radio

The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonization legislation:
Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU)

The following harmonized standards and technical specifications have been applied:

Health & Safety (Article 3.1(a)): EN 60065: 2014 (Eight Edition)
EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013

EMC (Article 3.1(b)): EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1
EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (Final draft)

Radio Spectrum (Article 3.2): EN 300 220-1 V3.1.1
EN 300 220-2 V3.1.1
EN 300 330 V2.1.1

Signed for and on behalf of: Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.

Mie, Japan — Place of Issue:
October 13, 2017 — Date of Issue:
Hiroaki Masaoka
General Manager,
Wireless System Design Department

SUMITOMO ELECTRIC GROUP

* Not available on all models

Serbian models

FOB
Keyless Access System



KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KVALITET Niš
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета КВАЛИТЕТ Ниш
Joint-stock company for quality testing KVALITET Niš

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RiTTo Broj: P1619035400
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE *No.*

Podnosilac zahteva: *Applicant:* RTTE CONSULTING DOO
11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVICA
KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 63/2.7

Vrsta opreme: *Equipment category:* KLJUČ ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZILU

Oznaka tipa/modela: *Equipment type/model:* TWB1G0090

Robna marka: *Equipment trademark:* HONDA

Proizvođač: *Manufacturer:* ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD.
Japan

Laboratorija/ispitni izveštaj: *Laboratory/Test report:*

Vrednovana dokumentacija *Evaluated documentation:*

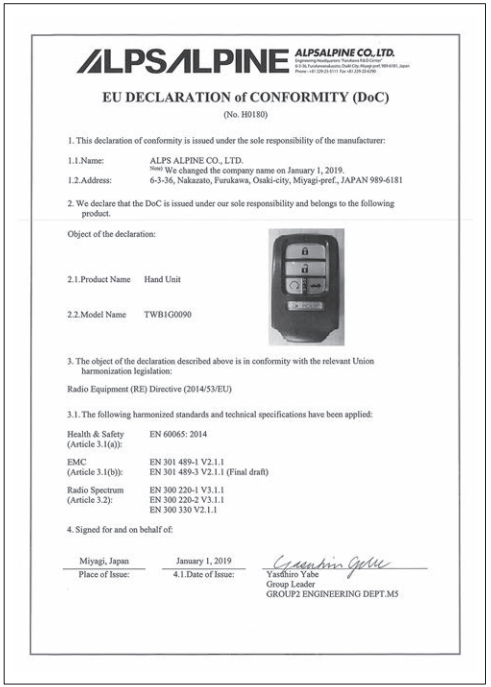
Bezbednost/Safety: UL Japan, Inc.:
11823804H-D,01.08.2017.
EMK/EMC: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.:
11510864H-C, 16.03.2017.
11823804H-C, 01.08.2017.
RiTTo/R&TTE: UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.:
11510864H-A, 16.03.2017.
11823804H-A, 01.08.2017.
11510864H-B, 16.03.2017.
11823804H-B, 01.08.2017.

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve 'Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi' (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the 'Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: *Place and date:* Niš, 12.03.2019.
Važi do: *Valid until:* 11.03.2022.
M.P. *Seal:*
Generalni direktor
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su istovetni sa proizvodima koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija, Tel: (018)550-768, 550-824, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs



ALPS ALPINE

ALPSALPINE CO., LTD.

EU DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC)

(No. H0180)

1. This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer:

1.1.Name: ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD.
Note) We changed the company name on January 1, 2019.
1.2.Address: 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

2. We declare that the DoC is issued under our sole responsibility and belongs to the following product.

Object of the declaration:

2.1.Product Name Hand Unit

2.2.Model Name TWB1G0090

3. The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonization legislation:

Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU)

3.1. The following harmonized standards and technical specifications have been applied:

Health & Safety (Article 3.1(a)): EN 60065: 2014

EMC (Article 3.1(b)): EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1
EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (Final draft)

Radio Spectrum (Article 3.2): EN 300 220-1 V3.1.1
EN 300 220-2 V3.1.1
EN 300 330 V2.1.1

4. Signed for and on behalf of:

Miyagi, Japan — Place of Issue:
January 1, 2019 — 4.1.Date of Issue:
Yasthiro Yabe
Group Leader
GROUP2 ENGINEERING DEPT.M5

Continued

Serbian models

FOB
Keyless Access System



Bulgaria (BG) Bulgarian
ЕС Декларация за съответствие
1. Тази декларация за съответствие се издава под пълната отговорност на производителя
1.1.Форма
1.2.Адрес
2.удостоверяваме и декларираме, че следният продукт/и/
2.1.Нов на продукта
2.2.Модел №
3.Директиви
3.1.Приложени хармонизирани стандарти
4.Място
4.1.Дата

Czech Republic (CZ) Czech
Prohlášení o shodě EU
1. Toto prohlášení o shodě se vydává výlučně na odpovědnost výrobce
1.1. název
1.2. Adresa
2. Prohlašujeme, že DoC je vydáváno na vlastní odpovědnost a patří k následujícímu produktu.
2.1. Jméno výrobku
2.2. Model číslo.
3. Směrnice
3.1. Aplikované harmonizovaná normy
4. Podpis
4.1. Datum vydání

Denmark (DA) Danish
EU Overensstemmelseserklaring
1. Denne overensstemmelseserklaring udstedes alene på fabrikantens ansvar
1.1.Firma
1.2.Adresse
2.certificerer og erklærer under eneansvar, at følgende produkt(er)
2.1.Produkt navn
2.2.Model nr.
3.Direktiver
3.1.Gældende harmoniserede standarder
4.Underskrift
4.1.Udstedelsesdato

Germany (DE) Deutsch
EG-Konformitatserklarung
1. Diese Konformitätserklärung wird unter der alleinigen Verantwortung des Herstellers ausgestellt
1.1.Firma
1.2.Adresse
2.bestatigen und erklaren in alleiniger Verantwortung, dass das/die folgende/n Produkt/e
2.1.Produktname
2.2.Modell Nr.
3.Richtlinie
3.1.Harmonisierte Normen
4.Unterschrift
4.1.Ausstellungsdatum

Estonia (EE) Estonian
EC Vastavusdeklaratsioon
1. Vastavusdeklaratsioon antakse välja ainuisikuliselt tootja vastutusel
1.1.Ettevote
1.2.Aadress
2.kinnitame ja deklareerime oma vastutusega, et järgnev toode (tooted)
2.1.Toote nimetus
2.2.Mudeli Number
3.Direktiivid
3.1.Kohaldatud kooskolaastud standard
4.Allkiri
4.1.Probleemi ilmnemise kuupaev

Ireland (IE) Irish
Dearbhú comhréireachta an AE
1. Eisíonn an dearbhú comhréireachta seo faoi fhreagracht amháin an mhonaróra
1.1. Ainm
1.2. Seoladh
2. Deirbhiúnaí go n-eisítear an DoC faoi ár bhfreagracht amháin agus go mbaineann sé leis an táirge seo a leanas.
2.1. Ainm Táirge



2.2. Mínla Uimh.
3. Treoracha
3.1. Caighdeáin Chomhchuibhithe Feidhmeacha
4. Síniú
4.1. Dáta eisiúna

Greece (EL) Greek
Δήλωση συμμόρφωσης ΕΕ
1. Η παρούσα δήλωση συμμόρφωσης εκδίδεται με αποκλειστική ευθύνη του κατασκευαστή
1.1. Όνομα
1.2.Διεύθυνση
2. Δηλώνουμε ότι η DoC εκδίδεται με αποκλειστική ευθύνη και ανήκει στο ακόλουθο προϊόν.
2.1. Όνομα προϊόντος
2.2. Αριθμός Μοντέλου.
3. Οδηγίες
3.1. Εφαρμοσμένων εναρμονισμένα πρότυπα
4. Υπογραφή
4.1. Ημερομηνία έκδοσης

Spain (ES) Spanish
Declaracion de Conformidad CE
1. Esta declaración de conformidad se emite bajo la exclusiva responsabilidad del fabricante.
1.1.Compania
1.2.Direccion
2.certificamos y declaramos bajo nuestra responsabilidad que el siguiente producto
2.1.Nombre de producto
2.2.Numero Model
3.Directivas
3.1.Estandares Armonizados Aplicados
4.Firma
4.1.Fecha de emision

France (FR) Franch
Declaration de Conformite
1. Cette déclaration de conformité est émise sous la seule responsabilité du fabricant.
1.1.Companie
1.2.Addresse
2.Nous certifions et declarons en toute responsabilite que le ou les produits suivants
2.1.Reference produit
2.2.No. Modele
3.Directives
3.1.Normes Harmonisees appliquees
4.Signature
4.1.Date d'edition

Croatia (HR) Croatian
EU deklaracija sukladnosti
1. Ova izjava o sukladnosti izdana je isključivo u odgovornosti proizvođača
1.1. Ime
1.2. Adresa
2. Izjavljujemo da je izdavanje osobne iskaznice pod jedinom odgovornošću i pripada sljedećem proizvodu.
2.1. Ime proizvoda
2.2. Model br.
3. Smjernice
3.1. Primijenjeni harmonizirani standardi
4. Potpis
4.1. Datum izdavanja

Italy(IT) Italian
Dichiarazione di Conformita CEE
1. Questa dichiarazione di conformità è rilasciata sotto la sola responsabilità del produttore
1.1.Societa
1.2.Indirizzo
2.certifica e dichiara sotto la propria responsabilita che, il seguente prodotto(i)
2.1.Prodotto
2.2.Modello
3.Direttive
3.1.Riferimenti standard europei in vigore
4.Firma
4.1.Data

Latvia (LV) Latvian

Serbian models

FOB
Keyless Access System



ES atbilstības deklarācija
1. Šo atbilstības deklarāciju izsniedz, uzņemoties tikai ražotāja atbildību
1.1. Nosaukums
1.2. Adrese
2. Mēs apliecinām, ka DoC tiek izsniegta uz mūsu vienīgās atbildības un pieder pie šāda produkta.
2.1. Produkta nosaukums
2.2. Modeļa Nr.
3. direktīvas
3.1. Piemērojamie harmonizētie standarti
4. Paraksts
4.1. Izdošanas datums

Lithuania (LT) Lithuanian
ES atitikties deklaracija
1. Ši atitikties deklaraciją išduodame tik gamintojo atsakomybe
1.1. vardas
1.2. Adresas
2. Mes deklaruojame, kad DoC išduodama už mūsų atsakomybę ir priklauso toliau nurodytam produktui.
2.1. Produkto pavadinimas
2.2. Modelio Nr.
3. Direkcijos
3.1. Taikomi suderinti standartai
4. Parašas
4.1. Išleidimo data

Luxembourg (LU) Luxembourgish
EU Konformitéit Erklärung
1. Dës Konformitéitserklärung gëtt ëmmer der Verantwortung vum Fabrikant ausgeliwwert
1.1. Numm
1.2. Adress
2. Mir erklärt dat de DoC ëmmer eis eleng verantwortlech ass a gutheiert zu dem folgendem Produkt.
2.1. ProduktName
2.2. Modell No.
3. Direktiven
3.1. Applizéiert'n harmoniséierte Standards
4. Ennerschrëft
4.1. Datum vum Thema

Hungary (HU) Hungarian
EU megfelelőségi nyilatkozat
1. Ez a megfelelőségi nyilatkozat a gyártó kizárólagos felelősségi körébe tartozik
1.1. Név
1.2. Cím
2. Kijelentjük, hogy a DoC kizárólagos felelősége alá tartozik, és a következő termékhez tartozik.
2.1. Termék név
2.2. Model szám.
3. Irányelvek
3.1. Alkalmazott harmonizált szabványok
4. Aláírás
4.1. Kiadás dátuma

Malta (MT) Maltese
EC Dikjarazzjoni ta 'Konformita'
1. Din id-dikjarazzjoni tal-konformità tinħareġ taħt ir-responsabbiltà unika tal-manifattur
1.1.Kumpanija
1.2.Indirizz
2.Dikjarat u ċertifikat taħt ir-responsabilta ta' dawn il-prodotti li ġejjin.
2.1.Isem il-prodott
2.2.Numru ta Mudell
3.Direttivi
3.1 Standards applikati armologati
4.Firma
4.1.Data ta Ħruġ

Netherlands (NL) Dutch
EC Verklaring van conformiteit
1. Deze conformiteitsverklaring wordt uitgegeven onder de uitsluitende verantwoordelijkheid van de fabrikant
1.1.Bedrijf
1.2.Adres
2.certificeren en verklaren onder Individuele verantwoordelijkheid dat het volgende product(en)
2.1.Productnaam
2.2.Model Nr.



3.Richtlijnen
3.1.Toegepaste geharmoniseerde normen
4.Handtekening
4.1.Datum van uitgave

Poland (PL) Polish
Deklaracja zgodności UE
1. Niniejsza deklaracja zgodności jest wydawana na wyłączną odpowiedzialność producenta
1.1. Nazwa
1.2. Adres
2. Oświadczamy, że deklaracja zgodności wydana jest na naszą wyłączną odpowiedzialność i należy do następującego produktu.
2.1. Nazwa produktu
2.2. Model nr
3. Dyrektywy
3.1. Stosowane zharmonizowane normy
4. Znak
4.1. Data wydania

Portugal (PT) Portuguese
Declaracao de Conformidade CE
1. Esta declaração de conformidade é emitida sob a exclusiva responsabilidade do fabricante
1.1.Empresa
1.2.Morada
2.certificamos e declaramos segundo nossa responsabilidade que o seguinte producto
2.1.Nome do producto
2.2.Modelo numero
3.Directivas
3.1.Normas aplicadas
4.Firma
4.1.Data de emissao

Romania (RO) Romanian
Declarația de conformitate a UE
1. Această declarație de conformitate este emisă pe răspunderea exclusivă a producătorului
1.1. Nume
1.2. Adresa
2. Declarăm că DoC este emis pe propria răspundere și aparține unmătorului produs.
2.1. Numele produsului
2.2. Numarul modelului.
3. Directive
3.1. Standarde armonizate aplicate
4. Semnătura
4.1. Data emiterii

Slovenia (SI) Slovenian
Izjava o skladnosti EU
1. Ta izjava o skladnosti se izda pod izključno pristojnostjo proizvajalca
1.1. Ime
1.2. Naslov
2. Izjavljamo, da je DoC izdano pod izključno pristojnostjo in pripada naslednjemu izdelku.
2.1. Ime izdelka
2.2. Model št.
3. direktive
3.1. Uporabljeni usklajeni standardi
4. Podpis
4.1. Datum izdaje

Slovakia (SK) Slovak
Vyhlásenie o zhode EÚ
1.Toto vyhlásenie o zhode sa vydáva výlučne na zodpovednosť výrobcu
1.1 názov
1.2.adresa
2.Vyhlasujeme, že DoC sa vydáva na našu zodpovednosť a patrí k nasledujúcemu produktu.
2.1.Mano Produktu
2.2.Model č.
3.Smernice
3.1 Aplikované harmonizované normy
4.Podpis
4.1.Dátum vydania

Finland (FI) Finnish
EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus

Serbian models

FOB
Keyless Access System



1. Tämä vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus annetaan valmistajan vastuulla
1.1.Yritys
1.2.Osoite
2.vakuutamme yksinomaan omalla vastuulla, että seuraava tuote
2.1.Laite
2.2.Mallitunnus
3.Direktiivit
3.1.Harmonisoidut standardit
4.Allekirjoitus
4.1.Paivamaara

Sweden (SE) Swedish
EU-deklaration om overensstammande
1. Denna forsakran om overensstammelse utfardas pa tillverkarens eget ansvar
1.1.Foretag
1.2.Adress
2.certifierar och deklarerar under vart egna ansvar att foljande produkt(er)
2.1.Produkt namn
2.2.Modell Nr.
3.Direktiv
3.1.Harmoniserade standarden
4.Signatur
4.1.Datum for utfardande

Iceland (IS) Icelandic
Samraemisyfirlysingu ESB
1. Pessi yfirlysing um samraemi er gefin út á ábyrgð framleiðanda
1.1. Nafn
1.2. Heimilisfang
2. Við lýsum yfir að DoC sé gefin út á eigin ábyrgð og tilheyrir eftirfarandi vöru.
2.1. Vöru Nafn
2.2. Gerð nr.
3. tilskipanir
3.1. Samþykktar samræmdar staðlar
4. Undirskrift
4.1. Útgáfudagur

Norway (NO) Norwegian
EF-samsvarserklæring
1. Denne samsvarserklæringen utstedes på produsentens ansvar
1.1. Selskap
1.2. Adresse
2. sertifiserer og erklærer på eget ansvar at følgende produkt(er)
2.1. Produktnavn
2.2. Modellnr.
3. Direktiver
3.1. Anvendte harmoniserte standarder
4. Signatur
4.1. Dato for utstedelse

Macedonia (MK) Macedonian
Изјава за сообразност на ЕУ
1. Оваа изјава за сообразност се издава под целосна одговорност на производителот
1.1. Име
1.2. Адреса
2. Изјавуваме дека DoC се издава под наша единствена одговорност и припаѓа на следниов производ.
2.1. Име на производот
2.2. Модел бр.
3. Директиви
3.1. Применетите хармонизирани стандарди
4. Потпис
4.1. Датум на издавање

Turkey (TR) Turkish
AB uygunluk beyanı
1. Bu uygunluk beyanı, üreticinin sorumluluğundadır.
1.1. isim
1.2. Adres
2. DoC'nin sadece bizim sorumluluğumuzda olduğunu ve aşağıdaki ürüne ait olduğunu beyan ederiz.
2.1. Ürün adı
2.2. Model numarası.
3. Direktifler



3.1. Uygulanan Uyumlaştırılmış Standartlar
4. Imza
4.1. Veriliş tarihi

Montenegro (YU) Crnogorski jezik
Изјава о усаглашености са ЕУ
1. Ова изјава о усаглашености се издаје под искључивом одговорношћу произвођача
1.1. Име
1.2. Адреса
2. Изјављујемо да се ДоЦ издаје под искључиво нашом искључивом одговорношћу и припада следећем производу.
2.1. Назив производа
2.2. модел бр.
3. Директиве
3.1. Примијењени хармонизовани стандарди
4. Потпис
4.1. Датум издавања

Serbian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with colour audio)



KVALITET

Akcionarsko društvo za ispitivanje kvaliteta KVALITET Niš
Акционарско друштво за испитивање квалитета КВАЛИТЕТ Ниш
Joint-stock company for quality testing KVALITET Niš

IE005 19

POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RiTTo Broj: P1619027700
CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - R&TTE *No.*

Podnosilac zahteva: *Applicant:* RTTE CONSULTING DOO
11090 BEOGRAD-RAKOVICA
KNEZA VIŠESLAVA 63/2.7

Vrsta opreme: *Equipment category:* AUDIO UREDJAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL SA BLUETOOTH-OM

Oznaka tipa/modela: *Equipment type/model:* AVH-5498ZH

Robna marka: *Equipment trademark:* HONDA

Proizvodjač: *Manufacturer:* PIONEER CORPORATION
JAPAN

Laboratorija/ ispitni izveštaj: *Laboratory/ Test report:*
Vrednovana dokumentacija *Evaluated documentation:*
Bezbednost/Safety: UL, Japan, Inc.: 11933167S, 04.12.2017./
EMK/EMC: UL Japan, Inc., Shonan EMC Lab.: 11933163S-B, 05.12.2017./
RiTTo/R&TTE: UL Japan, Inc. Shonan EMC Lab.:
11933165Y, 22.11.2017./
11933163S-A, 05.12.2017./

Na osnovu gore navedene dokumentacije utvrđeno je da gore navedena oprema zadovoljava zahteve 'Pravilnika o radio opremi i telekomunikacionoj terminalnoj opremi' (Sl. glasnik RS, 11/2012).
On the basis of the above mentioned documentation it is found that above mentioned equipment fulfils the requirements of the 'Rulebook on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette RS, 11/2012).

Nastale promene u specifikaciji, tipu/modelu, komponentama, električnim karakteristikama opreme koji utiču na usaglašenost sa navedenim Pravilnikom moraju se prijaviti "Kvalitet"-u a.d. Niš.
Any changes occur in the specification, type/model, components of the design, electrical construction which may influence on conformity to the above mention Rulebook, shall be forwarded to "Kvalitet".

Mesto i datum izdavanja: *Place and date:* Niš, 26.02.2019.
Važi do: *Valid until:* 25.02.2022.
M.P. *Seal:*
Generalni direktor
Vladimir Vukašinović, dipl.inž.

Ovaj dokument važi samo za proizvode koji su istovetni sa proizvodima koji su bili predmet vrednovanja.
Bul. Svetog Cara Konstantina 82-86, Niš 18000, Srbija, Tel: (018)550-766, 550-624, Fax: (018)550-636, 550-068
e-mail: office@kvalitet.co.rs, http://www.kvalitet.co.rs

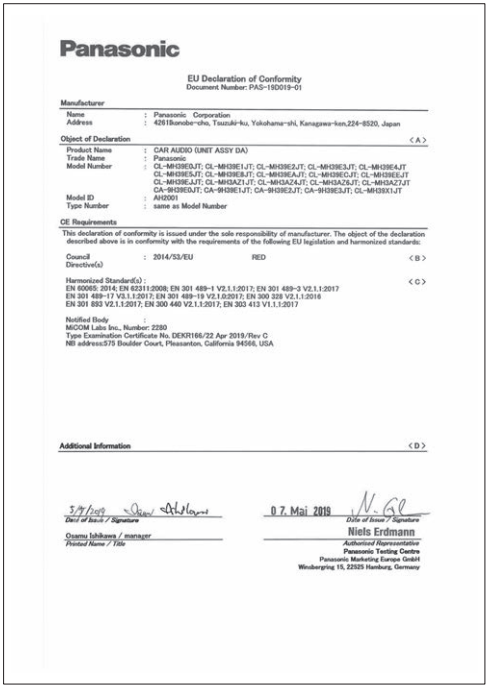
* Not available on all models

Continued

Serbian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)

Ovim, Panasonic, deklariše da je AH2001 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 2014/53/EU.



Panasonic

EU Declaration of Conformity
Document Number: PAS-19D019-01

Manufacturer
Name : Panasonic Corporation
Address : 4261Ikenobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken,224-8520, Japan

Object of Declaration <A>
Product Name : CAR AUDIO (UNIT ASSY DA)
Trade Name : Panasonic
Model Number : CL-MH39E0JT; CL-MH39E1JT; CL-MH39E2JT; CL-MH39E3JT; CL-MH39E4JT
CL-MH39E5JT; CL-MH39E8JT; CL-MH39EAJT; CL-MH39ECJT; CL-MH39EEJT
CL-MH39EJJT; CL-MH3AZ1JT; CL-MH3AZ4JT; CL-MH3AZ6JT; CL-MH3AZ7JT
CA-9H39E0JT; CA-9H39E1JT; CA-9H39E2JT; CA-9H39E3JT; CL-MH39X1JT
Model ID : AH2001
Type Number : same as Model Number

CE Requirements
This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of manufacturer. The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the requirements of the following EU legislation and harmonized standards:

Council Directive(s) : 2014/53/EU RED <B>

Harmonized Standard(s) : <C>
EN 60065: 2014; EN 62311:2008; EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1:2017; EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1:2017
EN 301 489-17 V3.1.1:2017; EN 301 489-19 V2.1.0:2017; EN 300 328 V2.1.1:2016
EN 301 893 V2.1.1:2017; EN 300 440 V2.1.1:2017; EN 303 413 V1.1.1:2017

Notified Body :
MiCOM Labs Inc., Number: 2280
Type Examination Certificate No. DEKR166/22 Apr 2019/Rev C
NB address:579 Boulder Court, Pleasanton, California 94566, USA

Additional Information <D>

3/7/2019 — Date of Issue / Signature
Osamu Ishikawa / manager — Printed Name / Title

07. Mai 2019 — Date of Issue / Signature
Niels Erdmann
Authorized Representative
Panasonic Testing Centre
Panasonic Marketing Europe GmbH
Winsbergring 15, 22525 Hamburg, Germany

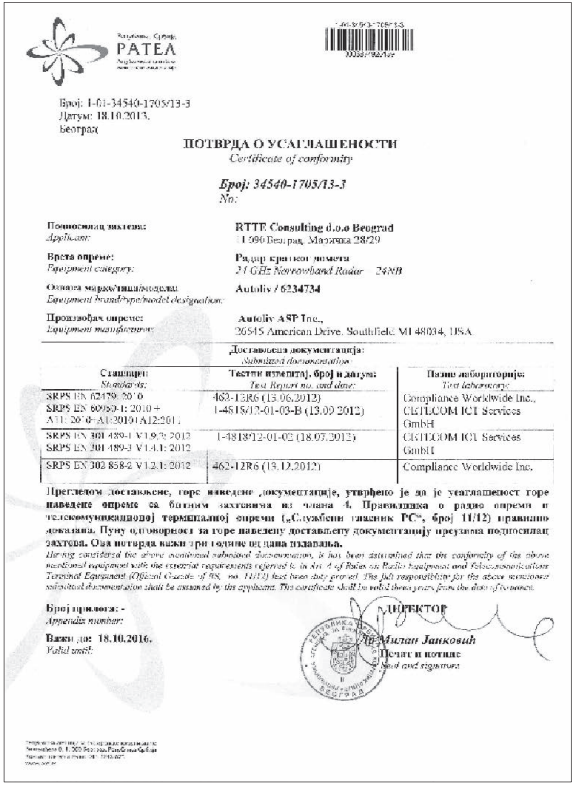
 * Not available on all models

Serbian models

Blind spot information system*/Cross Traffic Monitor*

И011 13

This product in accordance with Serbia technical regulation



PATEA

Број: 1-01-34540-1705/13-3
Датум: 18.10.2013.
Београд

ПОТВРДА О УСАГЛАШЕНОСТИ
Certificate of conformity

Број: 34540-1705/13-3
No:

Подносилац захтева: *Applicant:* **RTTE Consulting d.o.o Beograd**
11500 Beograd, Maksima 28/29

Врста опреме: *Equipment category:* **Радар кратког домета** *24 GHz Narrowband Radar 24dB*

Ознака марке/типа/модела: *Equipment brand/type/model designation:* **Autoliv / 62334734**

Произвођач опреме: *Equipment manufacturer:* **Autoliv ASP Inc.,**
26545 American Drive. Southfield. MI 48034, USA

Достављена документација: *Submitted documentation*

Стандарди: *Standards:*	**Тестни извештај, број и датум:** *Test Report no. and date:*	**Назив лабораторије:** *Test laboratory:*
SRPS EN 62479: 2011 + A11: 2011	463-13R6 (13.06.2013)	Compliance Worldwide Inc., CETECOM ICT Services GmbH
SRPS EN 60950-1: 2010 + A11: 2010 + A12: 2011	1-4818/12-01-03-B (13.09.2012)	
SRPS EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2: 2012	1-4818/12-01-02 (18.07.2012)	CETECOM ICT Services GmbH
SRPS EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1: 2012		
SRPS EN 302 858-2 V1.2.1: 2012	462-12R6 (13.12.2012)	Compliance Worldwide Inc.

Прегледом достављене, горе наведене документације, утврђено је да је усаглашеност горе наведене опреме са битним захтевима из члана 4. Правилника о радио опреми и телекомуникационој терминалној опреми („Службени гласник РС", број 11/12) правилно оцењена. Пуну одговорност за горе наведену достављену документацију преузима подносилац захтева. Ова потврда важи три године од дана издавања.
Having considered the above mentioned submitted documentation, it has been established that the conformity of the above mentioned equipment with the essential requirements referred to in Art. 4 of Rules on Radio Equipment and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette of RS, no. 11/12) has been duly proved. The full responsibility for the above mentioned submitted documentation shall be assumed by the applicant. This certificate shall be valid three years from the date of its issue.

Број прилога: - *Appendix number:*

Важи до: 18.10.2016. *Valid until:*

ДИРЕКТОР
Др Милан Јанковић
Печат и потпис
Seal and signature

* Not available on all models

Continued

Serbian models

Emergency Call (eCall)

Овиме, DENSO CORPORATION изјављује да је радио опрема тип усаглашена са Директивом 2014/53/EU. Цео текст ЕУ декларације о усаглашености доступам је на следећој интернет адреси: https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/



Број: 1-01-34540-32/19-5
Датум: 07.02.2019.
Београд

ПОТВРДА О УСАГЛАШЕНОСТИ
Certificate of conformity

Број: 34540-32/19-5
No:

Подносилац захтева: *Applicant:* **SINIŠA ŠKRBIĆ PR, INŽENJERSKE DELATNOSTI I TEHNIČKO SAVETOVANJE IN TECH, BORČA** 11211 Борча, Београд, Пут за Ошву 44

Врста опреме: *Equipment category:* **GSM 900/DCS 1800/UMTS 900/1800/2100/E-UTRA 800/900/1800/2100/2600/GNSS/WLAN 802.11 b/g/n контролна јединица за телематику** *GSM 900/DCS 1800/UMTS 900/1800/2100/E-UTRA 800/900/1800/2100/2600/GNSS/WLAN 802.11 b/g/n Telematics Control Unit*

Ознака марке/типа/модела: *Equipment brand/type/model designation:* **DENSO / OGEY10**

Произвођач опреме: *Equipment manufacturer:* **Denso Corporation** 1-1, Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661, Japan

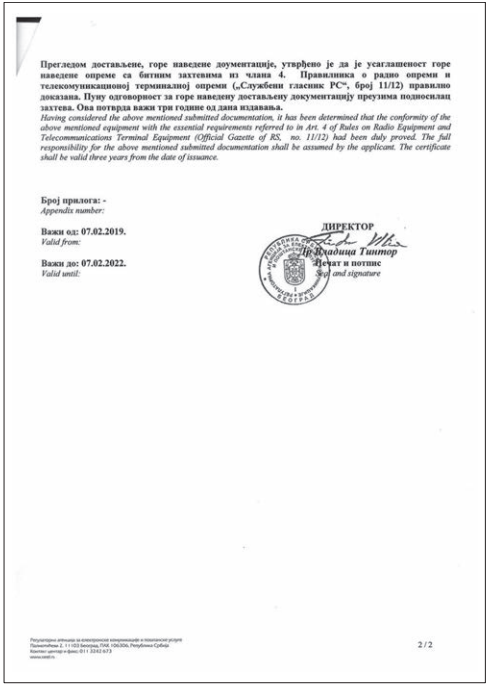
Достављена документација: *Submitted documentation:*

Стандард: *Standards:*	**Тестни извештај, број и датум:** *Test Report no. and date:*	**Назив лабораторије:** *Test laboratory:*
SRPS EN 62311:2009	12420654H-A	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.
SRPS EN 60950-1:2010 + A11:2010 + A1:2010 + A12:2011 + A2:2014	12420654H 12420657H, 04.12.2018.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab. UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.
SRPS EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1:2017 SRPS EN 301 489-17 V3.1.1:2017 Draft EN 301 489-19 V2.1.0 (2017-03) Draft EN 301 489-52 V1.1.0 (2016-11)	12420654H-D, 01.11.2018.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.
SRPS EN 301 511 V12.5.1:2017 SRPS EN 301 908-1 V11.1.1:2017 SRPS EN 301 908-2 V11.1.2:2018 SRPS EN 301 908-13 V11.1.2:2018	12420654H-B, 10.10.2018. GC180619C09_AL-T55A1-1, 17.09.2018.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab. Bureau Veritas ADT
SRPS EN 300 328 V2.1.1:2017 SRPS EN 303 413 V1.1.1:2018	12420654H-A, 01.11.2018. 12420654H-C, 01.11.2018.	UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab. UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab.

1 / 2

Serbian models

Emergency Call (eCall)



Прегледом достављене, горе наведене доументације, утврђено је да је усаглашеност горе наведене опреме са битним захтевима из члана 4. Правилника о радио опреми и телекомуникационој терминалној опреми („Службени гласник РС", број 11/12) правилно доказана. Пуну одговорност за горе наведену достављену документацију преузима подносилац захтева. Ова потврда важи три године од дана издавања.

Having considered the above mentioned submitted documentation, it has been determined that the conformity of the above mentioned equipment with the essential requirements referred to in Art. 4 of Rules on Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment (Official Gazette of RS, no. 11/12) had been duly proved. The full responsibility for the above mentioned submitted documentation shall be assumed by the applicant. The certificate shall be valid three years from the date of issuance.

Број прилога: -
Appendix number:

Важи од: 07.02.2019.
Valid from:

Важи до: 07.02.2022.
Valid until:

ДИРЕКТОР
Др Владица Тинтор
Печат и потпис
Seal and signature

2 / 2

Moldova models

BCM
Keyless Access System

European REC 70-03
This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



MINISTERUL ECONOMIEI ŞI INFRASTRUCTURII AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA
Instituţia Publică „SERVICIUL NAŢIONAL DE MANAGEMENT AL FRECVENŢELOR RADIO"

CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE

Nr. de înregistrare: **MD OC TIP 024 A6377-19**

Data emiterii: 18 aprilie 2019 Valabil până la: 18 aprilie 2022

ORGANISMUL DE CERTIFICARE OCpr - 024

Organismul de Certificare a produselor din Telecomunicaţii, Informatică şi Poştă (OC TIP)
MD-2003, str. Nicolae Dimo, nr. 22/20, or. Durleşti, mun. Chişinău, tel/ fax: (+373 22) 785750 / 785727

PRIN PREZENTUL DOCUMENT SE CONFIRMĂ FAPTUL, CĂ PRODUSELE IDENTIFICATE ASTFEL:
DENUMIREA / DESCRIEREA | **Codul NCM**

Descriere: **Modul radio pentru sistemul de acces în autovehicul BCM (Body Control Module)** | **8525**
Marca comercială: **Sumitomo Electric**
Model: **HAR0001**

Fabricate în serie

SÎNT CONFORME CU CERINŢELE OBLIGATORII STABILITE ÎN :
SM SR EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1:2015; ERC/REC 70-03 Anexa 1, 9; SM EN 60065:2015;
RT "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicaţii şi recunoaşterea conformităţii acestora", HG nr.1274 din 23.11.2007; RT "Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acţiune", aprobată prin Ordinul MTIC nr. 16 din 21.02.2014.

PRODUCĂTOR | **Codul ţării**
Uzine producătoare conform Anexei la prezentul Certificat de Conformitate | JP

SOLICITANT
Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.
1820 Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka-City, Mie Pref. 513-8631, JAPAN

CERTIFICATUL ESTE ELIBERAT ÎN BAZA
- Raoarte de încercări nr. 11724108H-A, nr. 11724108H-B din 21.09.2017; nr. 11370536H-D din 21.11.2016; nr. 11724108H-C din 21.09.2017; nr. 11724108H-D din 20.09.2017, eliberate de LÍ "UL Japan Inc." Japan, acreditat de NVLAP LAB nr. 200572-0.
- Certificate a sistemului de management IATF 16949:2016 conform Anexei la prezentul Certificat de Conformitate.
- Declaraţia de conformitate a producătorului din 13 octombrie 2017.
- Raport de evaluare final 51/19 din 17 aprilie 2019.

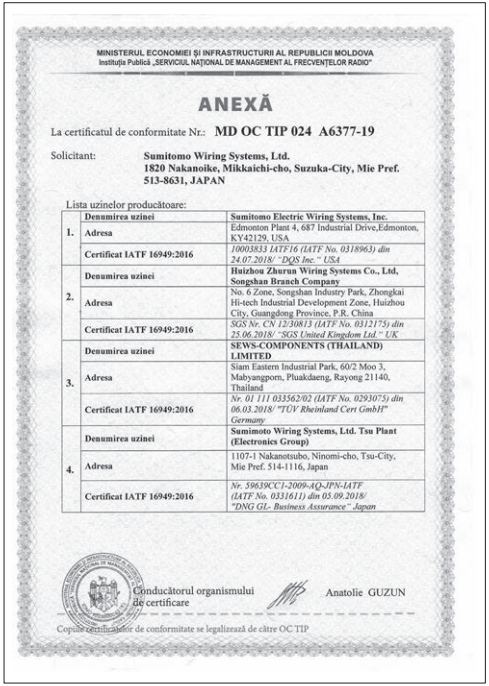
INFORMAŢIE SUPLIMENTARĂ:
Certificatul de Conformitate este valabil doar cu Anexă.
Echipamentul certificat poate fi utilizat în banda de frecvenţe 119-135 kHz, 433,050-434,790 MHz.
Schema de certificare: Modulul F1.

Conducătorul organismului de certificare Anatolie GUZUN

Copiile certificatelor de conformitate se legalizează de către OC TIP Seria A Nr. 001792

Moldova models

BCM
Keyless Access System



MINISTERUL ECONOMIEI ŞI INFRASTRUCTURII AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA
Instituţia Publică „SERVICIUL NAŢIONAL DE MANAGEMENT AL FRECVENŢELOR RADIO"

ANEXĂ

La certificatul de conformitate Nr.: **MD OC TIP 024 A6377-19**

Solicitant: **Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.**
1820 Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka-City, Mie Pref.
513-8631, JAPAN

Lista uzinelor producătoare:

1.	**Denumirea uzinei**	**Sumitomo Electric Wiring Systems, Inc.**
	Adresa	Edmonton Plant 4, 687 Industrial Drive,Edmonton, KY42129, USA
	Certificat IATF 16949:2016	*10003833 IATF16 (IATF No. 0318963) din 24.07.2018/ "DQS Inc." USA*
2.	**Denumirea uzinei**	**Huizhou Zhurun Wiring Systems Co., Ltd, Songshan Branch Company**
	Adresa	No. 6 Zone, Songshan Industry Park, Zhongkai Hi-tech Industrial Development Zone, Huizhou City, Guangdong Province, P.R. China
	Certificat IATF 16949:2016	*SGS Nr. CN 12/30813 (IATF No. 0312175) din 25.06.2018/ "SGS United Kingdom Ltd." UK*
3.	**Denumirea uzinei**	**SEWS-COMPONENTS (THAILAND) LIMITED**
	Adresa	Siam Eastern Industrial Park, 60/2 Moo 3, Mabyangporn, Pluakdaeng, Rayong 21140, Thailand
	Certificat IATF 16949:2016	*Nr. 01 111 033562/02 (IATF No. 0293075) din 06.03.2018/ "TÜV Rheinland Cert GmbH" Germany*
4.	**Denumirea uzinei**	**Sumimoto Wiring Systems, Ltd. Tsu Plant (Electronics Group)**
	Adresa	1107-1 Nakanotsubo, Ninomi-cho, Tsu-City, Mie Pref. 514-1116, Japan
	Certificat IATF 16949:2016	*Nr. 59639CC1-2009-AQ-JPN-IATF (IATF No. 0331611) din 05.09.2018/ "DNG GL- Business Assurance" Japan*

Conducătorul organismului de certificare — Anatolie GUZUN

Copiile certificatelor de conformitate se legalizează de către OC TIP



Connect with the Best

Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.

EU DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC)

This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer:

Name: Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.
Address: 1820 Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka-City, Mie Pref. 513-8631 JAPAN

We declare that the DoC is issued under our sole responsibility and belongs to the following product.

Object of the declaration:

Product Name: Unit Assy, BCM
Model Name: HAR0001
Software Name: Not reconfigurable radio

The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonization legislation:
Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU)

The following harmonized standards and technical specifications have been applied:

Health & Safety (Article 3.1(a)): EN 60065: 2014 (Eight Edition)
EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013

EMC (Article 3.1(b)): EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1
EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (Final draft)

Radio Spectrum (Article 3.2): EN 300 220-1 V3.1.1
EN 300 220-2 V3.1.1
EN 300 330 V2.1.1

Signed for and on behalf of: Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.

Mie, Japan — Place of Issue:
October 13, 2017 — Date of Issue:
Hiroaki Masaoka
General Manager,
Wireless System Design Department

SUMITOMO ELECTRIC GROUP

Moldova models

FOB Keyless Access System
European REC 70-03 This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



MINISTERUL ECONOMIEI ŞI INFRASTRUCTURII AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA
Instituţia Publică „SERVICIUL NAŢIONAL DE MANAGEMENT AL FRECVENŢELOR RADIO"

CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE

Nr. de înregistrare: **MD OC TIP 024 A6376-19**

Data emiterii: 17 aprilie 2019 Valabil până la: 17 aprilie 2022

ORGANISMUL DE CERTIFICARE OCpr - 024

Organismul de Certificare a produselor din Telecomunicaţii, Informatică şi Poştă (OC TIP)
MD-2003, str. Nicolae Dimo, nr. 22/20, or. Durleşti, mun. Chişinău, tel/ fax: (+373 22) 785750 / 785727

PRIN PREZENTUL DOCUMENT SE CONFIRMĂ FAPTUL, CĂ PRODUSELE IDENTIFICATE AS TFEL:
DENUMIREA / DESCRIEREA | **Codul NCM**

Descriere: **Telecomandă radio pentru sistemul de acces în autovehicul** | **8526**
Marca comercială: **HONDA**
Model: **TWB1G0090**

Fabricate în serie

SÎNT CONFORME CU CERINŢELE OBLIGATORII STABILITE ÎN :
SM SR EN 300 220-1 V2.4.1:2015; ERC/REC 70-03 Anexa 1, 9; SM EN 60065:2014;
RT "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicaţii şi recunoaşterea conformităţii acestora", aprobată prin HG nr.1274 din 23.11.2007;
RT "Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acţiune", aprobată prin Ordinul MTIC nr. 16 din 21.02.2014.

PRODUCĂTOR | **Codul ţării**
1. Dongguan ALPS Electronics Co., Ltd., Xinxing Industry zone, Xingfa South Street, Liwu Wusha, Changan Town, Dongguan City, Guangdong Province, 523857, P.R.of China | CN
2. ALCOM ELECTRÓNICOS DE MÉXICO, S.A. de C.V. Av. Ind. del Norte Lote 1-5, Parque Industrial del Norte, C.P. 88730, Reynosa, Tamaulipas, México

SOLICITANT
ALPS ALPINE Co., Ltd.,
6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref, 989-6181, Japan

CERTIFICATUL ESTE ELIBERAT ÎN BAZA
- Rapoarte de încercări nr. 11823804H-A, nr. 1823804H-B din 01.08.2017; nr. 11510864H-A nr. 11510864H-B, nr. 11510864H-C din 16.03.2017; nr. 11823804H-C din 01.08.2017; nr. 11823804H-D din 01.08.2017, eliberate de LI "UL Japan, Inc., Ise EMC Lab." Japan, acreditat de NVLAP LAB nr. 200572-0 / IAB nr. RTL02610.
- Certificate a sistemului de management IATF 16949:2016, nr. 10009712 IATF16 (IATF nr. 0328533) din 04.09.2018, eliberat de "DQS Holding GmbH" Germany; nr. CN10/30680 (IATF nr. 0311719) din 22.06.2018, eliberat de "SGS United Kingdom Ltd." UK.
- Declaraţia de conformitate a producătorului nr. H0180 din 01.01.2019.
- Raport de evaluare final nr. 47/19 din 16 aprilie 2019.

INFORMAŢII SUPLIMENTARE:
Echipamentul certificat poate fi utilizat în banda de frecvenţe 119-135 kHz, 433,05-434,79 MHz, cu puterea efectiv radiată $P_{ER} \leq 10$ mW. Schema de certificare: Modulul F1.

L.Ş. Conducătorul organismului de certificare — Anatolie GUZUN

Copiile certificatelor de conformitate se legalizează de către OC TIP Seria A Nr. 001791

Moldova models

FOB
Keyless Access System

ALPSALPINE ALPSALPINE CO.,LTD.

EU DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC)

(No. H0180)

1. This declaration of conformity is issued under the sole responsibility of the manufacturer:

1.1.Name: ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD.
Note) We changed the company name on January 1, 2019.
1.2.Address: 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181

2. We declare that the DoC is issued under our sole responsibility and belongs to the following product.

Object of the declaration:



2.1.Product Name Hand Unit

2.2.Model Name TWB1G0090

3. The object of the declaration described above is in conformity with the relevant Union harmonization legislation:

Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU)

3.1. The following harmonized standards and technical specifications have been applied:

Health & Safety (Article 3.1(a)): EN 60065: 2014

EMC (Article 3.1(b)): EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1
EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (Final draft)

Radio Spectrum (Article 3.2): EN 300 220-1 V3.1.1
EN 300 220-2 V3.1.1
EN 300 330 V2.1.1

4. Signed for and on behalf of:

Miyagi, Japan — Place of Issue:
January 1, 2019 — 4.1.Date of Issue:
Yasuhiro Yabe
Group Leader
GROUP2 ENGINEERING DEPT.M5

Bulgaria (BG) Bulgarian
ЕС Декларация за съответствие
1. Тази декларация за съответствие се издава под пълната отговорност на производителя
1.1.Фирма
1.2.Адрес
2.удостоверяване и декларираме, че следният продукт/и/
2.1.Вид на продукта
2.2.Модел №
3.Директиви
3.1.Приложени хармонизирани стандарти
4.Подпис
4.1.Дата

Czech Republic (CZ) Czech
Prohlášení o shodě EU
1. Toto prohlášení o shodě se vydává výlučně na odpovědnost výrobce
1.1. název
1.2. Adresa
2. Prohlašujeme, že DoC je vydáváno na vlastní odpovědnost a patří k následujícímu produktu.
2.1. Jméno výrobku
2.2. Model číslo.
3. Směrnice
3.1. Aplikované harmonizovaná normy
4. Podpis
4.1. Datum vydání

Denmark (DA) Danish
EU Overensstemmelseserklæring
1. Denne overensstemmelseserklæring udstedes alene på fabrikantens ansvar
1.1.Firma
1.2.Adresse
2.certificerer og erklærer under eneansvar, at følgende produkt(er)
2.1.Produkt navn
2.2.Model nr.
3.Direktiver
3.1.Gældende harmoniserede standarder
4.Underskrift
4.1.Udstedelsesdato

Germany (DE) Deutsch
EG-Konformitätserklärung
1. Diese Konformitätserklärung wird unter der alleinigen Verantwortung des Herstellers ausgestellt
1.1.Firma
1.2.Adresse
2.bestätigen und erklären in alleiniger Verantwortung, dass das/die folgende/n Produkt/e
2.1.Produktname
2.2.Modell Nr.
3.Richtlinie
3.1.Harmonisierte Normen
4.Unterschrift
4.1.Ausstellungsdatum

Estonia (EE) Estonian
EC Vastavusdeklaratsioon
1. Vastavusdeklaratsioon antakse välja ainuisikuliselt tootja vastutusel
1.1.Ettevõte
1.2.Aadress
2.kinnitame ja deklareerime oma vastutusega, et järgmer toode (tooted)
2.1.Toote nimetus
2.2.Mudeli Number
3.Direktiivid
3.1.Kohaldatud koskolaistatud standard
4.Allkiri
4.1.Poblkoomi ihmemise kuupaev

Ireland (IE) Irish
Dearbhú comhréireachta an AE
1. Eisíonn an dearbhú comhréireachta seo faoi fhreagracht amháin an mhonaróra
1.1. Ainm
1.2. Seoladh
2. Dearbhaímid go n-eisítear an DoC faoi ár bhfreagracht amháin agus go mbaineann sé leis an táirge seo a leanas.
2.1. Ainm Táirge

Moldova models

FOB
Keyless Access System



2.2. Mărfa Unih.
3. Trecracha
3.1. Caiqbhaláin Chomhaibhithe Feidhmeacha
4. Síniú
4.1. Dáta eisiúna

Greece (EL) Greek
Δήλωση συμμόρφωσης της ΕΕ
1. Η παρούσα δήλωση συμμόρφωσης εκδίδεται με αποκλειστική ευθύνη του κατασκευαστή
1.1. Όνομα
1.2. Διεύθυνση
2. Δηλώνουμε ότι η DoC εκδίδεται με αποκλειστική ευθύνη και αφορά στο ακόλουθο προϊόν.
2.1. Όνομα προϊόντος
2.2. Αριθμός Μοντέλου.
3. Οδηγίες
3.1. Εφαρμοσμένων εναρμονισμένα πρότυπα
4. Υπογραφή
4.1. Ημερομηνία έκδοσης

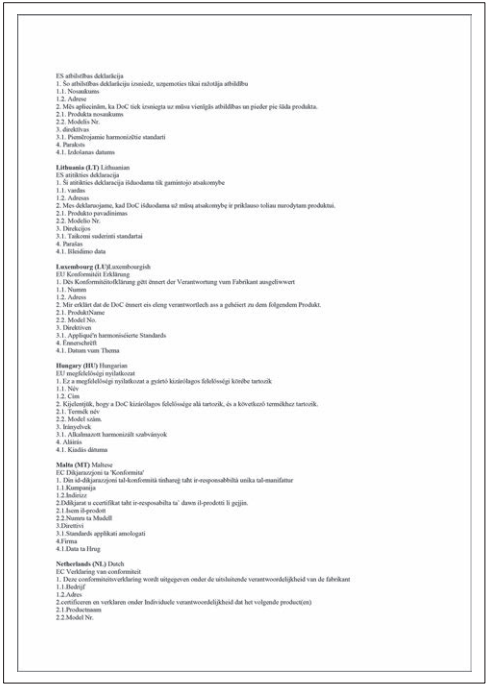
Spain (ES) Spanish
Declaracion de Conformidad CE
1. Esta declaración de conformidad se emite bajo la exclusiva responsabilidad del fabricante.
1.1.Companía
1.2.Direccion
2.certificamos y declaramos bajo nuestra responsabilidad que el siguiente producto
2.1.Nombre de producto
2.2.Numero Model
3.Directivas
3.1.Estandares Armonizados Aplicados
4.Firma
4.1.Fecha de emision

France (FR) French
Declaration de Conformite
1. Cette déclaration de conformité est émise sous la seule responsabilité du fabricant.
1.1.Companie
1.2.Addresse
2.Nous certifions et declarons en toute responsabilite que le ou les produits suivants
2.1.Reference produit
2.2.No. Modele
3.Directives
3.1.Normes Harmonisees appliquees
4.Signature
4.1.Date d'edition

Croatia (HR) Croatian
EU deklaracija sukladnosti
1. Ova izjava o sukladnosti izdana je isključivo u odgovornosti proizvođača
1.1. Ime
1.2. Adresa
2. Izjavljujemo da je izdavanje osobne iskaznice pod jedinom odgovornošću i pripada sljedećem proizvodu.
2.1. Ime proizvoda
2.2. Model br.
3. Smjernice
3.1. Primijenjeni harmonizirani standardi
4. Potpis
4.1. Datum izdavanja

Italy(IT) Italian
Dichiarazione di Conformita CEE
1. Questa dichiarazione di conformità è rilasciata sotto la sola responsabilità del produttore
1.1.Societa
1.2.Indirizzo
2.certifica e dichiara sotto la propria responsabilita che, il seguente prodotto(i)
2.1.Prodotto
2.2.Modello
3.Direttive
3.1.Riferimenti standard europei in vigore
4.Firma
4.1.Data

Latvia (LV) Latvian



ES atbilstības deklarācija
1. Šo atbilstības deklarāciju izsniedz, uzņemoties tikai ražotāja atbildību
1.1. Nosaukums
1.2. Adrese
2. Mēs apliecinām, ka DoC tiek izsniegta uz mūsu vienīgās atbildības un piieder pie šāda produkta.
2.1. Produkta nosaukums
2.2. Modeļa Nr.
3. direktīvas
3.1. Piemērojamie harmonizētie standarti
4. Paraksts
4.1. Izdošanas datums

Lithuania (LT) Lithuanian
ES atitikties deklaracija
1. Ši atitikties deklaracija išduodama tik gamintojo atsakomybe
1.1. vardas
1.2. Adresas
2. Mes deklaruojame, kad DoC išduodama už mūsų atsakomybę ir priklauso toliau nurodytam produktui.
2.1. Produkto pavadinimas
2.2. Modelio Nr.
3. Direktyvos
3.1. Taikomi suderinti standartai
4. Parašas
4.1. Išleidimo data

Luxembourg (LE) Luxembourgish
EU Konformitéit Erklärung
1. Dës Konformitéitserklärung gëtt ënnert der Verantwortung vum Fabrikant ausgestallt
1.1. Numm
1.2. Adress
2. Mir erklärt dat de DoC ënnert eis eleng verantwortlech ass a gehéiert zu dem folgenden Produkt.
2.1. ProduktName
2.2. Model Nr.
3. Direktiven
3.1. Applizéiert harmoniséierte Standards
4. Ennerschrëft
4.1. Datum vum Thema

Hungary (HU) Hungarian
EU megfelelőségi nyilatkozat
1. Ez a megfelelőségi nyilatkozat a gyártó kizárólagos felelősségi körébe tartozik
1.1. Név
1.2. Cím
2. Kijelentjük, hogy a DoC kizárólagos felelősége alá tartozik, és a következő termékhez tartozik.
2.1. Termék név
2.2. Model szám.
3. Irányelvek
3.1. Alkalmazott harmonizált szabványok
4. Aláírás
4.1. Kiadás dátuma

Malta (MT) Maltese
EC Dikjarazzjoni ta 'Konformita'
1. Din id-dikjarazzjoni tal-konformità tinħareġ taħt ir-responsabbiltà unika tal-manifattur
1.1.Kumpanija
1.2.Indirizz
2.Dikjarat u ċertifikat taħt ir-responsabilta ta' dawn il-prodotti li ġejjin.
2.1.Isem il-prodott
2.2.Numru ta Mudell
3.Direttivi
3.1.Standards applikati armologati
4.Firma
4.1.Data ta Ħruġ

Netherlands (NL) Dutch
EC Verklaring van conformiteit
1. Deze conformiteitsverklaring wordt uitgegeven onder de uitsluitende verantwoordelijkheid van de fabrikant
1.1.Budrijf
1.2.Adres
2.certificeren en verklaren onder Individuele verantwoordelijkheid dat het volgende product(en)
2.1.Productnaam
2.2.Model Nr.

Moldova models

FOB
Keyless Access System



3.Rezultatul
3.1.Toxicitatea
4.Handel
4.1.Data

Poland (PL) Polish
Deklaracja zgodności UE
1. Niniejsza deklaracja zgodności jest wydawana na wyłączną odpowiedzialność producenta
1.1. Nazwa
1.2. Adres
2. Oświadczamy, że deklaracja zgodności wydana jest na naszą wyłączną odpowiedzialność i należy do następującego produktu.
2.1. Nazwa produktu
2.2. Model nr
3.1. Stosowane zharmonizowane normy
4. Znak
4.1. Data wydania

Portugal (PT) Portuguese
Declaracao de Conformidade CE
1. Esta declaração de conformidade é emitida sob a exclusiva responsabilidade do fabricante
1.1.Empresa
1.2.Morada
2.certificamos e declaramos segundo nossa responsabilidade que o seguinte producto
2.1.Nome do producto
2.2.Modelo numero
3.Directivas
3.1.Normas aplicadas
4.Firma
4.1.Data de emissao

Romania (RO) Romanian
Declarația de conformitate a UE
1. Această declarație de conformitate este emisă pe răspunderea exclusivă a producătorului
1.1. Nume
1.2. Adresa
2. Declarăm că DoC este emis pe propria răspundere și aparține următorului produs.
2.1. Numele produsului
2.2. Numarul modelului.
3. Directive
3.1. Standarde armonizate aplicate
4. Semnătura
4.1. Data emiterii

Slovenia (SI) Slovenian
Izjava o skladnosti EU
1. Ta izjava o skladnosti se izda pod izključno pristojnostjo proizvajalca
1.1. Ime
1.2. Naslov
2. Izjavljamo, da je DoC izdano pod izključno pristojnostjo in pripada naslednjemu izdelku.
2.1. Ime izdelka
2.2. Model št.
3. direktive
3.1. Uporabljeni usklajeni standardi
4. Podpis
4.1. Datum izdaje

Slovakia (SK) Slovak
Vyhlásenie o zhode EÚ
1.Toto vyhlásenie o zhode sa vydáva výlučne na zodpovednosť výrobcu
1.1 názov
1.2.adresa
2.Vyhlasujeme, že DoC sa vydáva na našu zodpovednosť a patrí k nasledujúcemu produktu.
2.1.Mano Produktu
2.2.Model č.
3.Smernice
3.1 Aplikované harmonizované normy
4.Podpis
4.1.Dátum vydania

Finland (FI) Finnish
EU-vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus



1. Tämä vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus annetaan valmistajan vastuulla
1.1.Yritys
1.2.Osoite
2.vakuutamme yksinomaan omalla vastuulla, että seuraava tuote
2.1.Laite
2.2.Mallinnmos
3.Direktiivit
3.1.Harmonisoidut standardit
4.Allekirjoitus
4.1.Paivamaara

Sweden (SE) Swedish
EU-deklaration om overenstammande
1. Denna försäkran om överensstämmelse utfärdas på tillverkarens eget ansvar
1.1.Foretag
1.2.Adress
2.certifierar och deklarerar under vart egna ansvar att följande produkt(er)
2.1.Produkt namn
2.2.Modell Nr.
3.Direktiv
3.1.Harmoniserade standarden
4.Signatur
4.1.Datum för utfardande

Iceland (IS) Icelandic
Samræmisyfirlýsingu ESB
1. Þessi yfirlýsing um samræmi er gefin út á ábyrgð framleiðanda
1.1. Nafn
1.2. Heimilisfang
2. Við lýsum yfir að DoC sé gefin út á eigin ábyrgð og tilheyrir eftirfarandi vöru.
2.1. Vöru Nafn
2.2. Gerð nr.
3. tilskipanir
3.1. Samhæfðir samræmdar staðlar
4. Undirskrift
4.1. Útgáfudagur

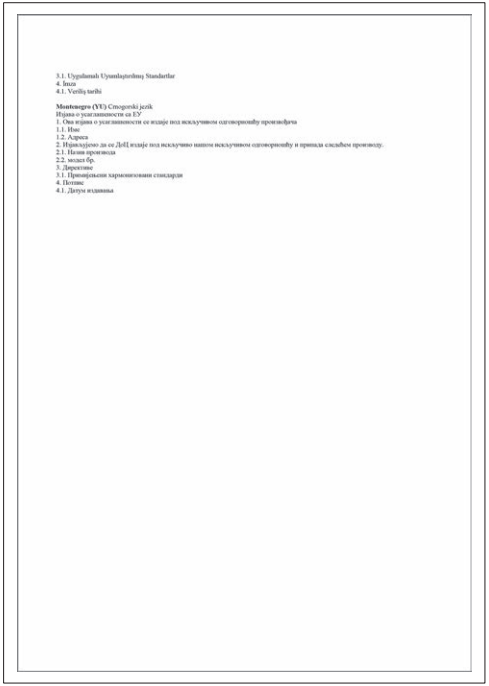
Norway (NO) Norwegian
EF-samsvarserklæring
1. Denne samsvarserklæringen utstedes på produsentens ansvar
1.1. Selskap
1.2. Adresse
2. sertifiserer og erklærer på eget ansvar at følgende produkt(er)
2.1. Produktnavn
2.2. Modellbr.
3. Direktiver
3.1. Anvendte harmoniserte standarder
4. Signatur
4.1. Dato for utstedelse

Macedonia (MK) Macedonian
Изјава за сообразност на ЕУ
1. Оваа изјава за сообразност се издава под исклучива одговорност на производителот
1.1. Име
1.2. Адреса
2. Изјавуваме дека DoC се издава под наша единствена одговорност и припаѓа на следниов производ.
2.1. Име на производот
2.2. Модел бр.
3. Директиви
3.1. Применливи хармонизирани стандарди
4. Потпис
4.1. Датум на издавање

Turkey (TR) Turkish
AB uygunluk beyanı
1. Bu uygunluk beyanı, üreticinin sorumluluğundadır.
1.1. isim
1.2. Adres
2. DoC'nun sadece bizim sorumluluğumuzda olduğunu ve aşağıdaki ürüne ait olduğunu beyan ederiz.
2.1. Ürün adı
2.2. Model numarası.
3. Direktifler

Moldova models

FOB Keyless Access System



3.1. Uygulanan Uyumlaştırılmış Standartlar
4. İmza
4.1. Yetkili tarihi

Montenegro (YU) Crnogorski jezik
Izjava o usaglašenosti sa EU
1. Ova izjava o usaglašenosti se izdaje pod isključivom odgovornošću proizvođača
1.1. Ime
1.2. Adresa
2. Izjavljujemo da se Delf izdaje pod isključivo našom isključivom odgovornošću i pripada sledećem proizvodu.
2.1. Naziv proizvoda
2.2. model Br.
3. Direktive
3.1. Primenjenim harmonizovani standardi
4. Potpis
4.1. Datum izdavanja

Moldova models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with colour audio)

HG nr.1274 din 23.11.2007
This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



MINISTERUL ECONOMIEI ŞI INFRASTRUCTURII AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA
Instituţia Publică „SERVICIUL NAŢIONAL DE MANAGEMENT AL FRECVENŢELOR RADIO"

CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE

Nr. de înregistrare: **MD OC TIP 024 A6351-19**

Data emiterii: 18 martie 2019 Valabil până la: 18 martie 2022

ORGANISMUL DE CERTIFICARE OCpr - 024

Organismul de Certificare a produselor din Telecomunicaţii, Informatică şi Poştă (OC TIP)
MD-2003, str. Nicolae Dimo, nr. 22/20, or. Durleşti, mun. Chişinău, tel/ fax: (+373 22) 785750 / 785727

PRIN PREZENTUL DOCUMENT SE CONFIRMĂ FAPTUL, CĂ PRODUSELE IDENTIFICATE AS TFEL:
DENUMIREA / DESCRIEREA

Codul NCM 8525

Descriere: **Sistem multimedia pentru autovehicule cu modul Bluetooth integrat**
Marca comercială: **HONDA**
Model: **AVH-5498ZH**

Fabricate în serie

SÎNT CONFORME CU CERINŢELE OBLIGATORII STABILITE ÎN :
SM SR EN 300 328 V1.7.1:2013; SM EN 60065:2015; RT "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicaţii şi recunoaşterea conformităţii acestora", aprobată prin HG nr.1274 din 23.11.2007; RT "Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acţiune", aprobată prin Ordinul MTIC nr. 16 din 21.02.2014.

PRODUCĂTOR

Codul ţării TH

Pioneer Manufacturing (Thailand) Co., Ltd.
Rojana Industrial Park, 1/31 Moo 5, Tambol Kanham, Amphur U-Thai,
Prinakornsri-Ayutthaya 13210, Thailand

SOLICITANT

Pioneer Corporation
25-1 Yamada, Kawagoe-shi, Saitama-ken 350-8555, Japan

CERTIFICATUL ISTE ELIBERAT ÎN BAZA

- Rapoarte de încercări nr. 11933163S-A şi nr. 11933163S-B din 05.12.2017; nr. 11933167S din 04.12.2017, elliberate de LÎ "UL Japan Inc.", Japan, acreditat de "JAB" Japan - nr. RTL02610.
- Certificat a sistemului de management - ISO 9001:2015 nr. 20002350 QM15 din 08 mai 2018, elliberat de "DQS Inc." USA acreditat de ANAB.
- Declaraţiei de conformitate a producătorului nr. ARE19-004-1 din 18 februarie 2019.
- Raportului de evaluare final nr. 43/19 din 15 martie 2019.

INFORMAŢII SUPLIMENTARĂ:
Echipamentul certificat poate fi utilizat în banda de frecvenţe 2400-2483,5 MHz cu puterea maximă de emisie 100 mW.
Schema de certificare: Modulul F1.

Conducătorul organismului de certificare Anatolie GUZUN

Copiile certificatelor de conformitate se legalizează de către OC TIP Seria A Nr. 001765

* Not available on all models

Moldova models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)

024

Reglementării tehnice “Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicaţii şi recunoaşterea conformităţii acestora” , aprobată prin Hotărîrea Guvernului nr. 1274 din 23.11.2007.
This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova



Panasonic

Panasonic Corporation
4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama City 224-8520, Japan

Declaraţie de conformitate

Noi, Panasonic Corporation declarăm pe propria noastră răspundere că produsul:

Marca : Panasonic
denumire comercială : Sistem multimedia pentru autovehicule, cu modul Bluetooth si WLAN integrat
tip sau model : AH2001

la care se referă această declaraţie este în conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi celelalte prevederi aplicabile ale Reglementării tehnice "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicaţii şi recunoaşterea conformităţii acestora", aprobată prin Hotărîrea Guvernului nr. 1274 din 23.11.2007.

Produsul este în conformitate cu următoarele standarde şi/sau documente normative:

Spectrul radio:
EN 300 328 V1.7.1:2013

Compatibilitatea electromagnetică:
EN 301 893 V1.7.1:2014
EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1:2013
EN 55032:2106

Siguranta utilizatorului:
EN 60065:2010

Semnătura:
Osamu Ishikawa
Funcţia: Manager
Automotive Company
IVI System Bussiness Unit Design2 Section2

Data de emitere: 19th Aug 2019

 * Not available on all models

Moldova models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)



MINISTERUL ECONOMIEI ŞI INFRASTRUCTURII AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA
Instituţia Publică „SERVICIUL NAŢIONAL DE MANAGEMENT AL FRECVENŢELOR RADIO"

CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE

Nr. de înregistrare: **MD OC TIP 024 A6445-19**

Data emiterii: 04 iulie 2019 Valabil până la: 04 iulie 2022

ORGANISMUL DE CERTIFICARE OCpr - 024

Organismul de Certificare a produselor din Telecomunicaţii, Informatică şi Poştă (OC TIP)
MD-2003, str. Nicolae Dimo, nr. 22/20, or. Durleşti, mun. Chişinău, tel/ fax: (+373 22) 785750 / 785727

PRIN PREZENTUL DOCUMENT SE CONFIRMĂ FAPTUL, CĂ PRODUSELE IDENTIFICATE AS TFEL:
DENUMIREA / DES CRIEREA

Cod NCM 8525

Descriere: **Sistem multimedia cu module radio Bluetooth şi WLAN incorporate**
Marca comercială: **Panasonic Corporation**
Model: **AH2001**

Fabricate în serie

SÎNT CONFORME CU CERINŢELE OBLIGATORII STABILITE ÎN :
SM EN 55032:2016; SM SR EN 300 328:V1.7.1:2013; SM SR EN 60065:2010; SM EN 301 893 V1.7.1:2014; SM EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1:2014; ERC/REC 70-03, Anexa 3; RT "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicaţii şi recunoaşterea conformităţii acestora", aprobată prin H.G. nr.1274 din 23.11.2007; RT "Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acţiune", aprobată prin Ordinul MTIC nr. 16 din 21.02.2014.

PRODUCĂTOR

Cod ţării JP

Panasonic Corporation Automotive & Industrial Systems Company,
4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

SOLICITANT

Panasonic Corporation,
4261, Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken, 224-8520, Japan

CERTIFICATUL ESTE ELIBERAT ÎN BAZA
- Rapoarte de încercări nr. 4016-1, nr. 4016-2 din 20 iunie 2019,eliberat de LÎ CEM, acreditat CNA RM "MOLDAC", certificat nr. LÎ-045.
- Certificat de examinare de tip EU nr. DEKR166 din 22.04.2019, eliberat de Organismul Notificat "MiCOM Labs Inc." USA, nr. 2280.
- Certificat de conformitate CB SCHEME nr. DK-81691-UL din 18.03.2019, eliberat de organismul de certificare "UL (Demko)" Denmark.
- Certificat a sistemului de management ISO 9001:2015 nr. YKA 0948577/TS-A din 02.02.2018, eliberat de "Lloyd's Register Quality Assurance Limited" Japan.
- Declaraţia de conformitate a producătorului din 08 aprilie 2019.
- Raport de evaluare final nr. 119/19 din 3 iulie 2019.

INFORMAŢII SUPLIMENTARE:
Echipamentul certificat poate fi utilizat doar în banda de frecvenţe 2400-2483,5 MHz, 5475-5725 MHz, 5725-5875 MHz cu puterea efectiv radiată Peirp ≤ 100 mW (2400-2483,5 MHz), Peirp ≤ 1 W (5475-5725 MHz), Peirp ≤ 25 mW (5725-5875 MHz). Schema de certificare: Modulul T1.

L.Ş. Conducătorul organismului de certificare Anatolie GUZUN

Copiile certificatelor de conformitate se legalizează de către OC TIP Seria A Nr. 001861

* Not available on all models

Moldova models

Blind spot information system*/Cross Traffic Monitor*

024

SM EN 55022-2014 p.5; ERC/REC 70-03, Anexa 5; SM EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2; SM EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1; SM EN60950-1:2010; Reglementarea Tehnică

Sensor radar pentru autovehicule



MINISTERUL TEHNOLOGIEI INFORMAȚIEI ȘI COMUNICAȚIILOR AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA
Întreprinderea de Stat „CENTRUL NAȚIONAL PENTRU FRECVENȚE RADIO"

CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE

Nr. de înregistrare **MD OC TIP 024 A5894-17**

Data emiterii: 21 iulie 2017 Valabil până la: 21 iulie 2020

ORGANISMUL DE CERTIFICARE OCpr - 024

Organismul de Certificare a produselor din Telecomunicații, Informatică și Poștă (OC TIP)
MD-2021, str. Drumul Viilor 28/2, mun. Chișinău, tel: +373 22 735394, fax: +373 22 733941

PRIN PREZENTUL DOCUMENT SE CONFIRMĂ FAPTUL, CĂ PRODUSUL E IDENTIFICATE ASTFEL:
DENUMIREA / DESCRIEREA:

Codul NM MD 8526

Descriere: **Sensor radar pentru autovehicule**
Marca comercială: **Autoliv**
Model: **6234734**

Fabricate în serie

SÎNT CONFORME CU CERINȚELE OBLIGATORII STABILITE ÎN:
SM EN 55022-2014 p.5; ERC/REC 70-03, Anexa 5; SM EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2; SM EN 301 489-3 V1.4.1; SM EN60950-1:2010; Reglementarea Tehnică "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de telecomunicații și recunoașterea conformității acestora", aprobată prin HG nr.1274 din 23.11.2007; Reglementarea Tehnică "Parametrii tehnici de emisie ai dispozitivelor cu rază mică de acțiune", aprobată prin Ordinul MTIC nr. 16 din 21.02.2014.

PRODUCĂTOR

Codul țării CA

Autoliv Electronics Canada Inc.,
7455 Birchmount Road, Markham, Ontario, L3R 5C2, Canada

SOLICITANT

Autoliv Electronics ASP Inc.,
26545 American Drive, Southfield MI 48034, USA

CERTIFICATUL ESTE ELIBERAT ÎN BAZA
- Raportului de încercări nr. 3684 din 18 iulie 2017, LÎ CEM - acreditat CNA RM "MOLDAC", certificat nr. LÎ-045 din 21 martie 2016;
- Rapoartelor de încercări nr. 1-4818/12-01-02 din 18.07.2012 și nr. 1-4818/12-01-03-B din 13.09.2012 eliberate de LÎ "CETECOM ICT Service GmbH" Germany, acreditat de "Deutsche Akkreditierungsstelle GmbH (DAkkS)" Germany - nr. D-PL-12076-01-01;
- Certificatului sistemului de management al calității ISO 16949:2009 nr. SGS TS-9 1214 M2 (IATF 0242442 / SGS US10/80080) din 05 iulie 2016, eliberat de SGS United Kingdom Ltd., United Kingdom;
- Declarația de conformitate a producătorului din 11 septembrie 2013.
- Raportului de evaluare final nr. 94/17 din 19 iulie 2017.

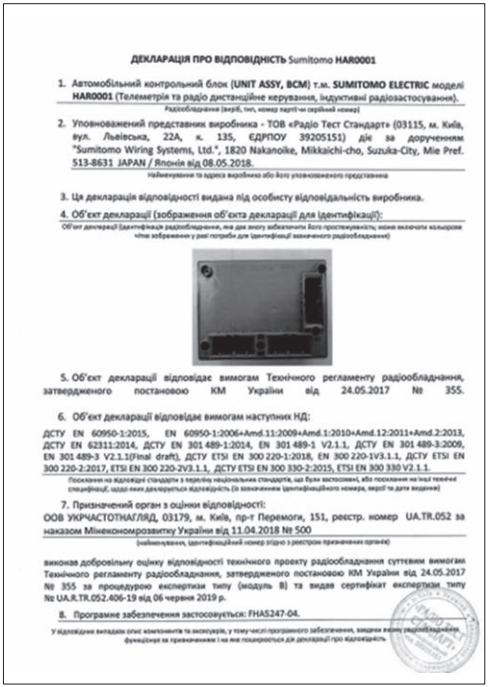
INFORMAȚII SUPLIMENTARE:
Echipamentul certificat poate fi utilizat în banda de frecvențe 24,05-24,25GHz.
Schema de certificare: Modulul F1.

Conducătorul organismului de certificare Anatolie GUZUN

Copiile certificatelor de conformitate se legalizează de către OC TIP Seria A Nr. 001267

* Not available on all models

Ukrainian models

BCM Keyless Access System	
https://www.sws.co.jp/en/product/document/certificate/HAR0001 Таким чином, компанія Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd. заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу HAR0001 відповідає Директиві 2014/53 / ЄС. Повний текст декларації ЄС про відповідність доступний за наступною Інтернет-адресою: https://www.sws.co.jp/en/product/document/certificate/HAR0001 Postal address: 1820, Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka, Mie 513-8631 JAPAN Manufacturer name: Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd. Operational frequency band: Frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 125kHz, 433.92MHz. Maximum Output Power: Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 107.2dBuV/m@10m. Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine	 **ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ** Sumitomo **HAR0001** 1. Автомобільний контрольний блок (**UNIT ASSY, BCM**) т.м. **SUMITOMO ELECTRIC** моделі **HAR0001** (Телеметрія та радіо дистанційне керування, індуктивні радіозастосування). Радіообладнання (виріб, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер) 2. Уповноважений представник виробника - ТОВ «Радіо Тест Стандарт» (03115, м. Київ, вул. Львівська, 22А, к. 135, ЄДРПОУ 39205151) діє за дорученням "Sumitomo Wiring Systems, Ltd.", 1820 Nakanoike, Mikkaichi-cho, Suzuka-City, Mie Pref. 513-8631 JAPAN / Японія від 08.05.2018. Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника 3. Ця декларація відповідності видана під особисту відповідальність виробника. 4. Об'єкт декларації (зображення об'єкта декларації для ідентифікації): Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація радіообладнання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простежуваність, може включати кольорове чітке зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації можливого радіообладнання) 5. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання, затвердженого постановою КМ України від 24.05.2017 № 355. 6. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам наступних НД: ДСТУ EN 60950-1:2015, EN 60950-1:2006+Amd.11:2009+Amd.1:2010+Amd.12:2011+Amd.2:2013, ДСТУ EN 62311:2014, ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014, EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1, ДСТУ EN 301 489-3:2009, EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1(Final draft), ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 220-1:2018, EN 300 220-1V3.1.1, ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 220-2:2017, ETSI EN 300 220-2V3.1.1, ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 330-2:2015, ETSI EN 300 330 V2.1.1. Посилання на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були застосовані, або посилання на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність (із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання) 7. Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності: ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД, 03179, м. Київ, пр-т Перемоги, 151, реєстр. номер UA.TR.052 за наказом Мінекономрозвитку України від 11.04.2018 № 500 (найменування, ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів) виконав добровільну оцінку відповідності технічного проекту радіообладнання суттєвим вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання, затвердженого постановою КМ України від 24.05.2017 № 355 за процедурою експертизи типу (модуль В) та видав сертифікат експертизи типу № UA.R.TR.052.406-19 від 06 червня 2019 р. 8. Програмне забезпечення застосовується: FHA5247-04. У відповідних випадках опис компонентів та експлуатів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, вищих вимог радіообладнання функціонує за призначенням і на яке поширюється дія декларації про відповідність

Ukrainian models

FOB Keyless Access System	
http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/HandUnit/TWB1G0090.pdf Таким чином, компанія ALPSALPINE CO., LTD. заявляє, що радіотехнічне обладнання типу TWB1G0090 відповідає Директиві 2014/53 / ЄС. Повний текст декларації ЄС про відповідність доступний за наступною Інтернет-адресою: http://www.alps.com/products/common/pdf/HandUnit/TWB1G0090.pdf Postal address: 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref., JAPAN 989-6181 Manufacturer name: ALPSALPINE CO., LTD. Operational frequency band: Frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 433.92MHz. Maximum Output Power: Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; 80.8dBuV/m@3m. Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine	 СЕРТИФІКАТ ЕКСПЕРТИЗИ ТИПУ TYPE EXAMINATION CERTIFICATE Зареєстровано в реєстрі органу з оцінки відповідності за № 2281.24-СЕТ Чинний від 16.04.2019 Продукція Ключ доступу (Smart Key (Hand Unit)) системи дистанційного керування доступом до автомобіля Тип TWB1G0090 Модель (і) TWB1G0090 Торгова назва або марка HONDA Виробник продукції "Alps Alpine Co., Ltd.", Японія, 6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa, Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref., 989-6181, Японія Сертифікат видано Призначеним органом з оцінки відповідності ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІДПРИЄМСТВА "УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ДОСЛІДНИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАДІО І ТЕЛЕБАЧЕННЯ" (ОС УНДІРТ). Реєстраційний номер: UA.TR.028 Висновки дослідження: п.6 - щодо забезпечення захисту здоров'я, безпеки людей і домашніх тварин, захисту власності (п.6, абзац 1) відповідає п.6 - щодо відповідного рівня електромагнітної сумісності (п.6, абзац 2) відповідає п.7 - щодо змоги ефективно використовувати і підтримувати ефективне використання радіочастотного ресурсу України у відповідній радіотехнології та уникати шкідливих завад (п.7) відповідає п.8 - щодо основних вимог до радіообладнання, стосовно якого здійснюється експертиза, на час складання цього сертифіката з нормативно-правових актів центрального органу виконавчої влади в галузі зв'язку не визначені відповідні вимоги Керівник органу з оцінки відповідності 20141

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System* (Models with colour audio)	
http://www.pioneer-car.eu/compliance Postal address: 28-8, Honkomagome 2-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Japan Manufacturer name: Pioneer Corporation Operational frequency band: 2400 - 2483.5 MHz Maximum Output Power: +4 dBm Importer Name: Pride Motor LLC Postal address: 12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine	

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ

1. Радіообладнання: **Bluetooth (IEEE Std 802.15.1), AM (MF), FM, DAB**
(марка, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер)

2. **ТОВ «Нормакон-Україна»** (офіс 314, вул. Кірова 139, м. Мелітополь, Запорізька обл., 72319, Україна, код ЄДРПОУ 37463168).
(найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника,

3. *Ця декларація відповідності видана під особисту відповідальність виробника.*

4. Об'єкт декларації:
Назва обладнання: **Програвач автомобільний (Car Audio);**
Модель: **AVH-5498ZH;**
Торговельна марка: **«HONDA»;**
Виробник: **«PIONEER CORPORATION»** (25-1 Yamada, Kawagoe-shi, Saitama-ken 350-8555, JAPAN) / **«ПІОНЕР КОРПОРЕЙШН»** (25-1 Ямада, Кавагоє-ші, Сайтама-кен 350-8555, Японія);
Місце виробництва: **«PIONEER MANUFACTURING(THAILAND) CO., LTD.»** (Rojana Industrial Park, 1/31 Moo 5, Tambol Kanham, Amphur U-Thai, Pranakornsri-Ayutthaya 13210, Thailand) / **«ПІОНЕР МАНУФАКТУРІНГ (ТАЇЛАНД) КО., ЛТД.»** (Рояна Індастріал Парк, 1/31, Му 5, Тамбол Канхем, Амфур Ю-Тай, Пранакорнсрі-Аутая 13210, Таїланд);
Номер партії або серійний номер: **продукція виготовляється серійно.**
(ідентифікація радіообладнання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простежуваність; може включати кольорове чітке зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації технічного радіообладнання)

5. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам **«Технічного регламенту радіообладнання», затвердженого постановою Кабінета Міністрів України від 24.05.2017р. № 355**

6. Стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були застосовані, та інші стандарти і технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність.
з безпеки (пункт 6 технічного регламенту):
ДСТУ EN 60065:2017 (EN 60065:2014,AC:2016, AC:2017, A11:2017, IDT;IEC 60065:2014, MOD, Cor 1:2015, Cor 2:2016, IDT);
з електромагнітної сумісності (пункт 6 технічного регламенту):
ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014 (EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2, IDT);
ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-17:2008 (ETSI EN 301 489-17:2002, IDT);
ефективного використання радіочастотного ресурсу (пункт 7 технічного регламенту):
ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 328:2017 (ETSI EN 300 328:2016, IDT),
Draft ETSI EN 303 345 V1.1.7 (2017-03).
(із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання)

7. Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності *ООВ «Орган сертифікації «Центр сертифікації матеріалів та виробів» (№ UA.TR.032)*
(найменування, ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів)

Виконав роботи **з оцінки відповідності за процедурою експертизи типу (Модуль В)**
(опис виконаних ним дій)

та видав сертифікат експертизи типу **№ UA.032.CT.0105-19 від 06 березня 2019 р.**
(у разі залучення призначеного органу з оцінки відповідності)

8. Додаткова інформація:

Підписано від імені та за договором дорученням від 20.02.2019р. «PIONEER CORPORATION» (25-1 Yamada, Kawagoe-shi, Saitama-ken 350-8555, JAPAN) уповноваженим представником в Україні ТОВ «Нормакон-Україна».

м. Мелітополь, Україна — 06 березня 2019 р.
(місце та дата видачі)

Директор ТОВ «Нормакон-Україна» — О. В. Шелегін

ТОВ «НОРМАКОН-УКРАЇНА» Код ЄДРПОУ 37463168

Взята на облік у ООВ ТОВ «ОС «ЦСМВ»» UA.032.0 0105-19 від 07.03.2019

* Not available on all models

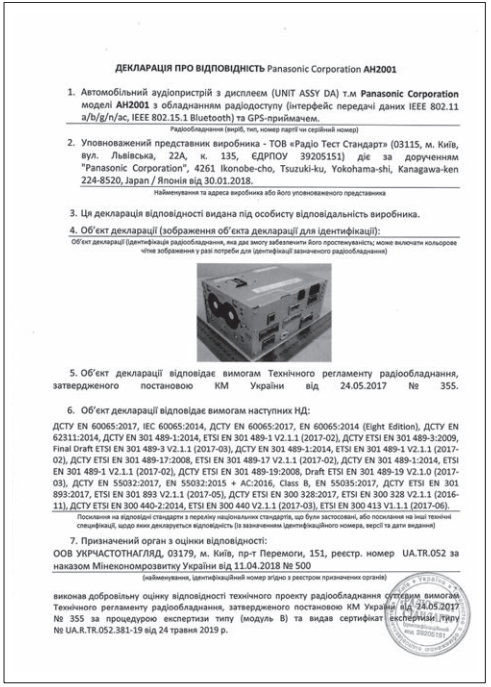
Continued

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)

https://service.panasonic.ua/

справжнім Panasonic Corporation заявляє, що тип радіообладнання AH2001 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання;
повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:
https://service.panasonic.ua/
(розділ «Технічне регулювання»)
моделі; [AH2001]
Postal address:
4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama City, 224-8520, Japan
Manufacturer name:
Panasonic Corporation
Operational frequency band:
Specfications of Bluetooth
Frequency band: 2402-2480MHz
Specfications of 2.4GHz WLAN
Frequency band: 2412-2472MHz
Maximum Output Power:
Specfications of Bluetooth
Maximum output power: 0.1dBm
Specfications of 2.4GHz WLAN
Maximum output power: 11.9dBm
Importer Name:
Pride Motor LLC
Postal address:
12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine



ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ Panasonic Corporation **AH2001**

1. Автомобільний аудіопристрій з дисплеєм (UNIT ASSY DA) т.м **Panasonic Corporation** моделі **AH2001** з обладнанням радіодоступу (інтерфейс передачі даних IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac, IEEE 802.15.1 Bluetooth) та GPS-приймачем.
Радіообладнання (модель, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер)

2. Уповноважений представник виробника - ТОВ «Радіо Тест Стандарт» (03115, м. Київ, вул. Львівська, 22А, к. 135, ЄДРПОУ 39205151) діє за дорученням "Panasonic Corporation", 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken 224-8520, Japan / Японія від 30.01.2018.
Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника

3. Ця декларація відповідності видана під особисту відповідальність виробника.

4. Об'єкт декларації (зображення об'єкта декларації для ідентифікації):
Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація радіообладнання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простежуваність; може включати кольорове чітке зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації зазначеного радіообладнання)

5. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання, затвердженого постановою КМ України від 24.05.2017 № 355.

6. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам наступних НД:
ДСТУ EN 60065:2017, IEC 60065:2014, ДСТУ EN 60065:2017, EN 60065:2014 (Eight Edition), ДСТУ EN 62311:2014, ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-1:2014, ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009, Final Draft ETSI EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (2017-03), ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014, ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-17:2008, ETSI EN 301 489-17 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014, ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-19:2008, Draft ETSI EN 301 489-19 V2.1.0 (2017-03), ДСТУ EN 55032:2017, EN 55032:2015 + AC:2016, Class B, EN 55035:2017, ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 893:2017, ETSI EN 301 893 V2.1.1 (2017-05), ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 328:2017, ETSI EN 300 328 V2.1.1 (2016-11), ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 440-2:2014, ETSI EN 300 440 V2.1.1 (2017-03), ETSI EN 300 413 V1.1.1 (2017-06).
Посилання на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були застосовані, або посилання на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність (із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання)

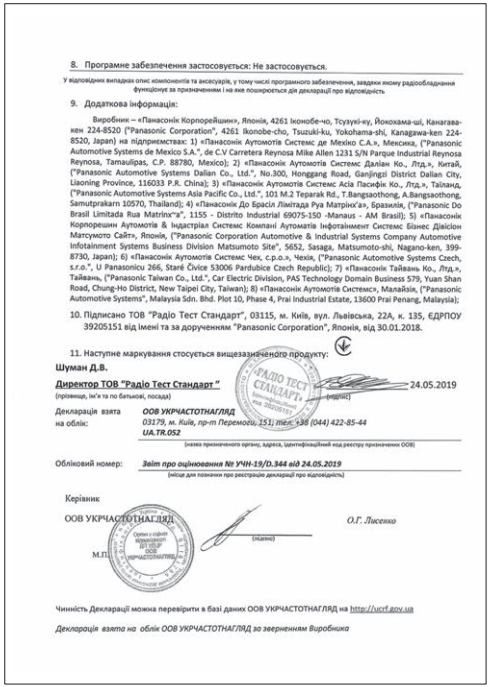
7. Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності:
ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД, 03179, м. Київ, пр-т Перемоги, 151, реєстр. номер UA.TR.052 за наказом Мінекономрозвитку України від 11.04.2018 № 500
(найменування, ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів)

виконав добровільну оцінку відповідності технічного проекту радіообладнання суттєвим вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання, затвердженого постановою КМ України від 24.05.2017 № 355 за процедурою експертизи типу (модуль В) та видав сертифікат експертизи типу № UA.R.TR.052.381-19 від 24 травня 2019 р.

* Not available on all models

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)



8. Програмне забезпечення застосовується: Не застосовується.

У відповідних випадках опис компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, завдяки якому радіообладнання функціонує за призначенням і на яке поширюється дія декларації про відповідність

9. Додаткова інформація:

Виробник – «Панасонік Корпорейшин», Японія, 4261 Іконобе-чо, Тсузукі-ку, Йокохама-ші, Канагава-кен 224-8520 ("Panasonic Corporation", 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken 224-8520, Japan) на підприємствах: 1) «Панасонік Аутомотів Системс де Мехіко С.А.», Мексика, ("Panasonic Automotive Systems de Mexico S.A.", de C.V Carretera Reynosa Mike Allen 1231 S/N Parque Industrial Reynosa Reynosa, Tamaulipas, C.P. 88780, Mexico); 2) «Панасонік Аутомотів Системс Даліан Ко., Лтд.», Китай, ("Panasonic Automotive Systems Dalian Co., Ltd.", No.300, Honggang Road, Ganjingzi District Dalian City, Liaoning Province, 116033 P.R. China); 3) «Панасонік Аутомотів Системс Асіа Пасифік Ко., Лтд.», Таїланд, ("Panasonic Automotive Systems Asia Pacific Co., Ltd.", 101 M.2 Teparak Rd., T.Bangsaothong, A.Bangsaothong, Samutprakarn 10570, Thailand); 4) «Панасонік До Браєіл Лімітада Руа Матрінх'а», Бразилія, ("Panasonic Do Brasil Limitada Rua Matrinx"a", 1155 - Distrito Industrial 69075-150 -Manaus - AM Brasil); 5) «Панасонік Корпорешин Аутомотів & Індастріал Системс Компані Аутомотів Інфотаймент Системс Бізнес Дівіісіон Матсумото Сайт», Японія, ("Panasonic Corporation Automotive & Industrial Systems Company Automotive Infotainment Systems Business Division Matsumoto Site", 5652, Sasaga, Matsumoto-shi, Nagano-ken, 399-8730, Japan); 6) «Панасонік Аутомотів Системс Чех, с.р.о.», Чехія, ("Panasonic Automotive Systems Czech, s.r.o.", U Panasonicu 266, Staré Čívice 53006 Pardubice Czech Republic); 7) «Панасонік Тайвань Ко., Лтд.», Тайвань, ("Panasonic Taiwan Co., Ltd.", Car Electric Division, PAS Technology Domain Business 579, Yuan Shan Road, Chung-Ho District, New Taipei City, Taiwan); 8) «Панасонік Аутомотів Системс», Малайзія, ("Panasonic Automotive Systems", Malaysia Sdn. Bhd. Plot 10, Phase 4, Prai Industrial Estate, 13600 Prai Penang, Malaysia);

10. Підписано ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт", 03115, м. Київ, вул. Львівська, 22А, к. 135, ЄДРПОУ 39205151 від імені та за дорученням "Panasonic Corporation", Японія, від 30.01.2018.

11. Наступне маркування стосується вищезазначеного продукту:

Шуман Д.В.

Директор ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт" 24.05.2019

(прізвище, ім'я та по батькові, посада) (підпис)

Декларація взята на облік: ***ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД*** *03179, м. Київ, пр-т Перемоги, 151; тел.: +38 (044) 422-85-44* ***UA.TR.052***

(назва призначеного органу, адреса, ідентифікаційний код реєстру призначених ООВ)

Обліковий номер: ***Звіт про оцінювання № УЧН-19/D.344 від 24.05.2019***

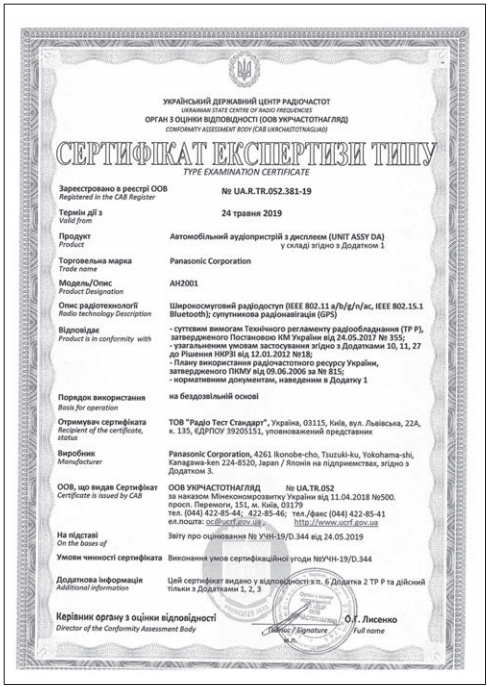
(місце для позначки про реєстрацію декларації про відповідність)

Керівник ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД *О.Г. Лисенко*

М.П. (підпис)

Чинність Декларації можна перевірити в базі даних ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД на http://ucrf.gov.ua

Декларація взята на облік ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД за зверненням Виробника



УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ ЦЕНТР РАДІОЧАСТОТ
UKRAINIAN STATE CENTRE OF RADIO FREQUENCIES
ОРГАН З ОЦІНКИ ВІДПОВІДНОСТІ (ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД)
CONFORMITY ASSESSMENT BODY (CAB UKRCHASTOTNAGLIAD)

СЕРТИФІКАТ ЕКСПЕРТИЗИ ТИПУ
TYPE EXAMINATION CERTIFICATE

Зареєстровано в реєстрі ООВ *Registered in the CAB Register*	**№ UA.R.TR.052.381-19**
Термін дії з *Valid from*	**24 травня 2019**
Продукт *Product*	**Автомобільний аудіопристрій з дисплеєм (UNIT ASSY DA)** у складі згідно з Додатком 1
Торговельна марка *Trade name*	**Panasonic Corporation**
Модель/Опис *Product Designation*	**AH2001**
Опис радіотехнології *Radio technology Description*	**Широкосмуговий радіодоступ (IEEE 802.11 a/h/g/n/ac, IEEE 802.15.1 Bluetooth); супутникова радіонавігація (GPS)**
Відповідає *Product is in conformity with*	**- суттєвим вимогам Технічного регламенту радіообладнання (ТР РЕ), затвердженого Постановою КМ України від 24.05.2017 № 355; - узагальненим умовам застосування згідно з Додатками 10, 11, 27 до Рішення НКРЗІ від 12.01.2012 №18; - Плану використання радіочастотного ресурсу України, затвердженого ПКМУ від 09.06.2006 за № 815; - нормативним документам, наведеним в Додатку 1**
Порядок використання *Basis for operation*	**на бездозвільній основі**
Отримувач сертифіката *Recipient of the certificate, status*	**ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт"**, Україна, 03115, Київ, вул. Львівська, 22А, к. 135, ЄДРПОУ 39205151, уповноважений представник
Виробник *Manufacturer*	**Panasonic Corporation,** 4261 Ikonobe-cho, Tsuzuki-ku, Yokohama-shi, Kanagawa-ken 224-8520, Japan / Японія на підприємствах, згідно з Додатком 3.
ООВ, що видав Сертифікат *Certificate is issued by CAB*	**ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД** **№ UA.TR.052** за наказом Мінекономрозвитку України від 11.04.2018 №500. просп. Перемоги, 151, м. Київ, 03179 тел. (044) 422-85-44; 422-85-46; тел./факс (044) 422-85-41 ел.пошта: oc@ucrf.gov.ua; http://www.ucrf.gov.ua
На підставі *On the bases of*	**Звіту про оцінювання № УЧН-19/D.344 від 24.05.2019**
Умови чинності сертифіката	**Виконання умов сертифікаційної угоди №УЧН-19/D.344**
Додаткова інформація *Additional information*	**Цей сертифікат видано у відповідності з п. 6 Додатка 2 ТР Р та дійсний тільки з Додатками 1, 2, 3**

Керівник органу з оцінки відповідності *Director of the Conformity Assessment Body* **О.Г. Лисенко** *Signature / Full name*

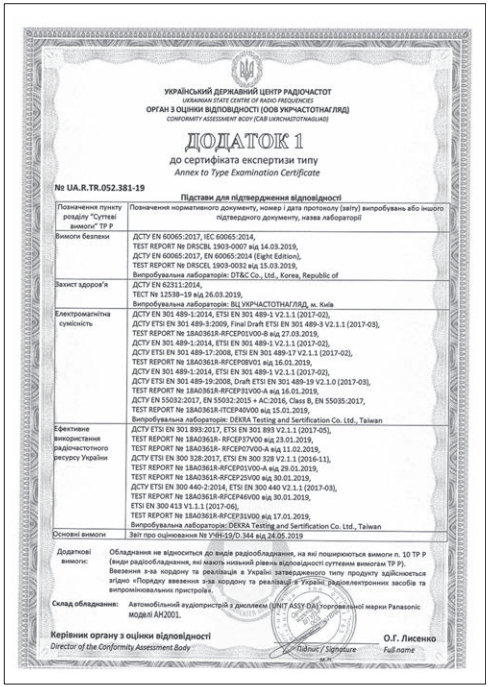
М.П.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)



УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ ЦЕНТР РАДІОЧАСТОТ
UKRAINIAN STATE CENTRE OF RADIO FREQUENCIES
ОРГАН З ОЦІНКИ ВІДПОВІДНОСТІ (ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД)
CONFORMITY ASSESSMENT BODY (CAB UKRCHASTOTNAGLIAD)

ДОДАТОК 1
до сертифіката експертизи типу
Annex to Type Examination Certificate

№ UA.R.TR.052.381-19

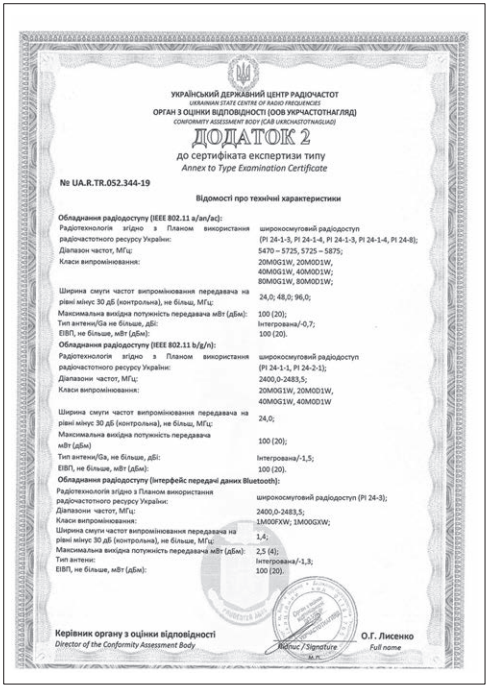
Підстави для підтвердження відповідності

Позначення пункту розділу "Суттєві вимоги" ТР Р	Позначення нормативного документу, номер і дата протоколу (звіту) випробувань або іншого підтвердного документу, назва лабораторії
Вимоги безпеки	ДСТУ EN 60065:2017, IEC 60065:2014, TEST REPORT № DRSCBL 1903-0007 від 14.03.2019, ДСТУ EN 60065:2017, EN 60065:2014 (Eight Edition), TEST REPORT № DRSCEL 1903-0032 від 15.03.2019, Випробувальна лабораторія: DT&C Co., Ltd., Korea, Republic of
Захист здоров'я	ДСТУ EN 62311:2014, ТЕСТ № 12538–19 від 26.03.2019, Випробувальна лабораторія: ВЦ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД, м. Київ
Електромагнітна сумісність	ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014, ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009, Final Draft ETSI EN 301 489-3 V2.1.1 (2017-03), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP01V00-B від 27.03.2019, ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014, ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-17:2008, ETSI EN 301 489-17 V2.1.1 (2017-02), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP03V01 від 16.01.2019, ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014, ETSI EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1 (2017-02), ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-19:2008, Draft ETSI EN 301 489-19 V2.1.0 (2017-03), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP31V00-A від 16.01.2019, ДСТУ EN 55032:2017, EN 55032:2015 + AC:2016, Class B, EN 55035:2017, TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-ITCEP40V00 від 15.01.2019, Випробувальна лабораторія: DEKRA Testing and Sertification Co. Ltd., Taiwan
Ефективне використання радіочастотного ресурсу України	ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 893:2017, ETSI EN 301 893 V2.1.1 (2017-05), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R- RFCEP37V00 від 23.01.2019, TEST REPORT № 18A0361R- RFCEP07V00-A від 11.02.2019, ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 328:2017, ETSI EN 300 328 V2.1.1 (2016-11), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP01V00-A від 29.01.2019, TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP25V00 від 30.01.2019, ДСТУ ETSI EN 300 440-2:2014, ETSI EN 300 440 V2.1.1 (2017-03), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP46V00 від 30.01.2019, ETSI EN 300 413 V1.1.1 (2017-06), TEST REPORT № 18A0361R-RFCEP31V00 від 17.01.2019, Випробувальна лабораторія: DEKRA Testing and Sertification Co. Ltd., Taiwan
Основні вимоги	Звіт про оцінювання № УЧН-19/D.344 від 24.05.2019

Додаткові вимоги: Обладнання не відноситься до видів радіообладнання, на які поширюються вимоги п. 10 ТР Р (види радіообладнання, які мають низький рівень відповідності суттєвим вимогам ТР Р).
Ввезення з-за кордону та реалізація в Україні затвердженого типу продукту здійснюється згідно «Порядку ввезення з-за кордону та реалізації в Україні радіоелектронних засобів та випромінювальних пристроїв».

Склад обладнання: Автомобільний аудіопристрій з дисплеєм (UNIT ASSY DA) торгової марки Panasonic моделі AH2001.

Керівник органу з оцінки відповідності
Director of the Conformity Assessment Body
Підпис / *Signature*
О.Г. Лисенко
Full name



УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ ЦЕНТР РАДІОЧАСТОТ
UKRAINIAN STATE CENTRE OF RADIO FREQUENCIES
ОРГАН З ОЦІНКИ ВІДПОВІДНОСТІ (ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД)
CONFORMITY ASSESSMENT BODY (CAB UKRCHASTOTNAGLIAD)

ДОДАТОК 2
до сертифіката експертизи типу
Annex to Type Examination Certificate

№ UA.R.TR.052.344-19

Відомості про технічні характеристики

Обладнання радіодоступу (IEEE 802.11 a/an/ac):

Радіотехнологія згідно з Планом використання радіочастотного ресурсу України:	широкосмуговий радіодоступ (PI 24-1-3, PI 24-1-4, PI 24-1-3, PI 24-1-4, PI 24-8);
Діапазон частот, МГц:	5470 – 5725, 5725 – 5875;
Класи випромінювання:	20M0G1W, 20M0D1W, 40M0G1W, 40M0D1W; 80M0G1W, 80M0D1W;
Ширина смуги частот випромінювання передавача на рівні мінус 30 дБ (контрольна), не більш, МГц:	24,0; 48,0; 96,0;
Максимальна вихідна потужність передавача мВт (дБм):	100 (20);
Тип антени/Ga не більше, дБі:	Інтегрована/-0,7;
EIBП, не більше, мВт (дБм):	100 (20).

Обладнання радіодоступу (IEEE 802.11 b/g/n):

Радіотехнологія згідно з Планом використання радіочастотного ресурсу України:	широкосмуговий радіодоступ (PI 24-1-1, PI 24-2-1);
Діапазони частот, МГц:	2400,0-2483,5;
Класи випромінювання:	20M0G1W, 20M0D1W, 40M0G1W, 40M0D1W
Ширина смуги частот випромінювання передавача на рівні мінус 30 дБ (контрольна), не більш, МГц:	24,0;
Максимальна вихідна потужність передавача мВт (дБм)	100 (20);
Тип антени/Ga, не більше, дБі:	Інтегрована/-1,5;
EIBП, не більше, мВт (дБм):	100 (20).

Обладнання радіодоступу (інтерфейс передачі даних Bluetooth):

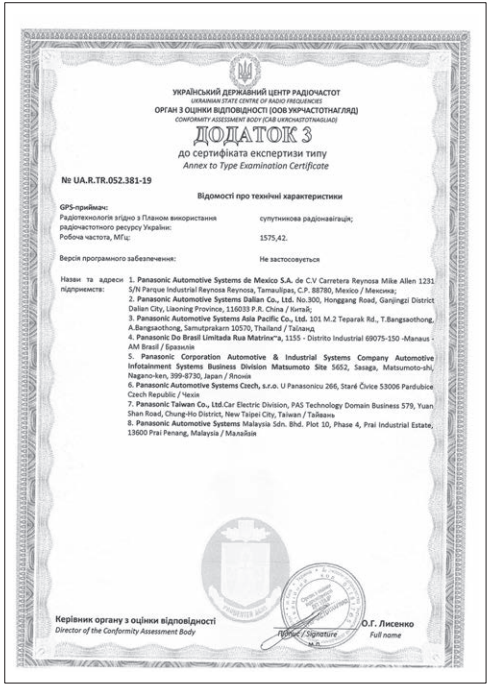
Радіотехнологія згідно з Планом використання радіочастотного ресурсу України:	широкосмуговий радіодоступ (PI 24-3);
Діапазони частот, МГц:	2400,0-2483,5;
Класи випромінювання:	1M00FXW; 1M00GXW;
Ширина смуги частот випромінювання передавача на рівні мінус 30 дБ (контрольна), не більше, МГц:	1,4;
Максимальна вихідна потужність передавача мВт (дБм):	2,5 (4);
Тип антени:	Інтегрована/-1,3;
EIBП, не більше, мВт (дБм):	100 (20).

Керівник органу з оцінки відповідності
Director of the Conformity Assessment Body
Підпис / *Signature*
О.Г. Лисенко
Full name

* Not available on all models

Ukrainian models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)



УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ ДЕРЖАВНИЙ ЦЕНТР РАДІОЧАСТОТ
UKRAINIAN STATE CENTRE OF RADIO FREQUENCIES
ОРГАН З ОЦІНКИ ВІДПОВІДНОСТІ (ООВ УКРЧАСТОТНАГЛЯД)
CONFORMITY ASSESSMENT BODY (CAB UKRCHASTOTNAGLIAD)

ДОДАТОК 3
до сертифіката експертизи типу
Annex to Type Examination Certificate

№ UA.R.TR.052.381-19

Відомості про технічні характеристики

GPS-приймач:

Радіотехнологія згідно з Планом використання радіочастотного ресурсу України: супутникова радіонавігація;

Робоча частота, МГц: 1575,42.

Версія програмного забезпечення: Не застосовується

Назви та адреси підприємств:
1. **Panasonic Automotive Systems de Mexico S.A.** de C.V Carretera Reynosa Mike Allen 1231, S/N Parque Industrial Reynosa Reynosa, Tamaulipas, C.P. 88780, Mexico / Мексика;
2. **Panasonic Automotive Systems Dalian Co., Ltd.** No.300, Honggang Road, Ganjingzi District Dalian City, Liaoning Province, 116033 P.R. China / Китай;
3. **Panasonic Automotive Systems Asia Pacific Co., Ltd.** 101 M.2 Teparak Rd., T.Bangsaothong, A.Bangsaothong, Samutprakarn 10570, Thailand / Таїланд
4. **Panasonic Do Brasil Limitada Rua Matrinxᵉa,** 1155 - Distrito Industrial 69075-150 -Manaus - AM Brasil / Бразилія
5. **Panasonic Corporation Automotive & Industrial Systems Company Automotive Infotainment Systems Business Division Matsumoto Site** 5652, Sasaga, Matsumoto-shi, Nagano-ken, 399-8730, Japan / Японія
6. **Panasonic Automotive Systems Czech,** s.r.o. U Panasonicu 266, Staré Čívice 53006 Pardubice Czech Republic / Чехія
7. **Panasonic Taiwan Co., Ltd.**Car Electric Division, PAS Technology Domain Business 579, Yuan Shan Road, Chung-Ho District, New Taipei City, Taiwan / Тайвань
8. **Panasonic Automotive Systems** Malaysia Sdn. Bhd. Plot 10, Phase 4, Prai Industrial Estate, 13600 Prai Penang, Malaysia / Малайзія

Керівник органу з оцінки відповідності
Director of the Conformity Assessment Body
Підпис / Signature
О.Г. Лисенко
Full name

* Not available on all models

Continued

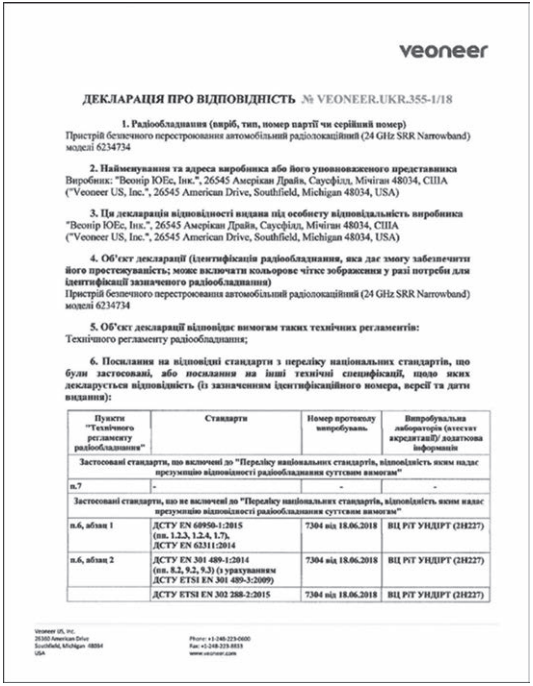
Ukrainian models

Blind spot information System*/Cross Traffic Monitor*

https://www.veoneer.com/en/regulatory
Veoneer confirms that part 6234734 (24 GHz Narrowband) is covered under the Certificate of Comformity (CoC attached) issued in accordance with Technical Regulation (TR) Ukraine No 355. This certificate was issued June 21st, 2018 and is valid for one calendar year, until June 20th 2019. The Declaration of Conformance is required by April 1st, 2019, our application for this Declaration of Conformance under this regulation has been submitted to the relevant certification body. Part 6234734 can be marketed under the above CoC until the Declaration of Conformance is issued prior to April 1st, 2019.
Postal address:
26545 American Drive Southfield, Michigan, 48034 United States of America
Manufacturer name:
Veoneer US, Inc.
Operational frequency band:
24.125 GHz
Maximum Output Power:

- робоча частота, ГГц	24,125;
- пікова еквівалентна ізотропно-випромінювальна потужність (e.i.r.p.), мВт (дБм)	100 (20);
- клас випромінювання	180MP0N;
- ширина смуги частот випромінювання передавача на рівні мінус 30 дБ - контрольна, не більше, МГц	250;

Importer Name:
Pride Motor LLC
Postal address:
12, Sagaydachnogo Str., Kyiv,04070, Ukraine



veoneer

ДЕКЛАРАЦІЯ ПРО ВІДПОВІДНІСТЬ № VEONEER.UKR.355-1/18

1. Радіообладнання (виріб, тип, номер партії чи серійний номер)
Пристрій безпечного перестроювання автомобільний радіолокаційний (24 GHz SRR Narrowband) моделі 6234734

2. Найменування та адреса виробника або його уповноваженого представника
Виробник: "Веонір ЮЕс, Інк.", 26545 Америкен Драйв, Саусфілд, Мічіган 48034, США
("Veoneer US, Inc.", 26545 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan 48034, USA)

3. Ця декларація відповідності видана під особисту відповідальність виробника
"Веонір ЮЕс, Інк.", 26545 Америкен Драйв, Саусфілд, Мічіган 48034, США
("Veoneer US, Inc.", 26545 American Drive, Southfield, Michigan 48034, USA)

4. Об'єкт декларації (ідентифікація радіообладнання, яка дає змогу забезпечити його простежуваність; може включати кольорове чітке зображення у разі потреби для ідентифікації зазначеного радіообладнання)
Пристрій безпечного перестроювання автомобільний радіолокаційний (24 GHz SRR Narrowband) моделі 6234734

5. Об'єкт декларації відповідає вимогам таких технічних регламентів:
Технічного регламенту радіообладнання;

6. Посилання на відповідні стандарти з переліку національних стандартів, що були застосовані, або посилання на інші технічні специфікації, щодо яких декларується відповідність (із зазначенням ідентифікаційного номера, версії та дати видання):

Пункти "Технічного регламенту радіообладнання"	Стандарти	Номер протоколу випробувань	Випробувальна лабораторія (атестат акредитації)/ додаткова інформація
Застосовані стандарти, що включені до "Переліку національних стандартів, відповідність яким надає презумпцію відповідності радіообладнання суттєвим вимогам"			
п.7	-	-	-
Застосовані стандарти, що не включені до "Переліку національних стандартів, відповідність яким надає презумпцію відповідності радіообладнання суттєвим вимогам"			
п.6, абзац 1	ДСТУ EN 60950-1:2015 (пп. 1.2.3, 1.2.4, 1.7), ДСТУ EN 62311:2014	7304 від 18.06.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІРТ (2Н227)
п.6, абзац 2	ДСТУ EN 301 489-1:2014 (пп. 8.2, 9.2, 9.3) (з урахуванням ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009)	7304 від 18.06.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІРТ (2Н227)
	ДСТУ ETSI EN 302 288-2:2015	7304 від 18.06.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІРТ (2Н227)

Veoneer US, Inc.
26545 American Drive
Southfield, Michigan 48034
USA

Phone: +1-248-223-0600
Fax: +1-248-223-8833
www.veoneer.com

* Not available on all models

Ukrainian models

Blind spot information System*/Cross Traffic Monitor*



7. Призначений орган з оцінки відповідності ДЕРЖАВНОГО ПІДПРИЄМСТВА "УКРАЇНСЬКИЙ НАУКОВО-ДОСЛІДНИЙ ІНСТИТУТ РАДІО І ТЕЛЕБАЧЕННЯ". Реєстраційний номер: UA.TR.028
(найменування, ідентифікаційний номер згідно з реєстром призначених органів)
виконав **експертизу типу**
(опис виконаних ним дій)
та видав сертифікат експертизи типу **№ 2288.1-СЕТ від 08.02.2019**

8. У відповідних випадках опис компонентів та аксесуарів, у тому числі програмного забезпечення, завдяки якому радіообладнання функціонує за призначенням і на яке поширюється дія декларації про відповідність
Версія виконання виробу (HW version), яка впливає на дотримання суттєвих вимог: 1C01;

9. Додаткова інформація -

Підписано від імені та за дорученням:
"Веонір ЮЕс, Інк." ("Veoneer US, Inc."), США

Саусфілд, Мічіган (Southfield, Michigan) 19 лютого 2019 р.
(місце та дата видачі)

Директор — Claire ONeill
(посада) (підпис) (ініціали та прізвище)

М.П.

2/3

* Not available on all models

Israeli models

Blind spot information System*/Cross Traffic Monitor*

א. השימוש במכשיר פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי,
לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.
ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Keyless Access System

א. השימוש במכשיר הינו על בסיס "משני" ופטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
כלומר – לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין.
ב. רק "בפעולת בזק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הציוד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי.
מתן "שרות בזק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת.
ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

 * Not available on all models

Israeli models

Hands-Free Telephone System*
(Models with Display Audio)



מדינת ישראל

משרד התקשורת

אגף בכיר רישוי

ת.ד. 29107, תל-אביב 6525101

האישור רק למכשיר שהדגם שלו מופיעים בדיוק לדגם באישור זה

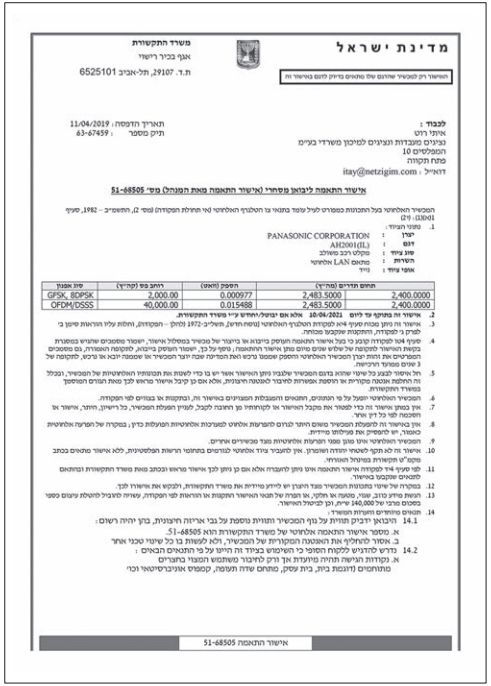
ב. לצורך גישה לאינטרנט, נקודת הגישה תקשר מחוץ לחצרים אך ורק אל בעל רישיון
למתן שירות גישה לאינטרנט (ISP), כהון-ספק אינטרנט). הקישור לספק אינטרנט יהיה
אך ורק באמצעות קו תקשורת נתונים המסופק בידי בעל רישיון למתן שירותי תקשורת
ג. קישור נקודת הגישה מחוץ לחצרים לצורך תקשורת נתונים יתאפשר באמצעות תשתיות של
בעל רישיון מתאים.
ד. לצורך שרות לגד ג' מדש רישיון נוסף מאגף בכיר רישוי (משרד התקשורת).

11/04/2019

תאריך מתן אישור

מר עודד אגמון
מנהל נתיבי שטרית

אישור התאמה 51-68505



מדינת ישראל

משרד התקשורת

אגף בכיר רישוי

ת.ד. 29107, תל-אביב 6525101

האישור רק למכשיר שהדגם שלו מופיעים בדיוק לדגם באישור זה

לכבוד :
איתי רוט
נציגים מוצרות ונציגים למיכון משרדי בע"מ
המפלסים 10
פתח תקווה
דואר"א : itay@netzigim.com

תאריך הדפסה : 11/04/2019
תיק מספר : 63-67459

אישור התאמה ליבואן מיוחדי (אישור התאמה מטת המנהל) מס' 51-68505

המכשיר האלחוטי בעל התכונות כמפורט לעיל עומד בתנאי בו הוכרזו האלחוטי (אי תחולת תקנות) (סמי 2), התשס"ב – 1982, סעיף (2)(ב)(1).

1. סוגי הציוד:

יצרן :	PANASONIC CORPORATION
דגם :	AH2001(IL)
סוג ציוד :	מקלט רכב משולב
הערות :	מתאים LAN אלחוטי
אופי ציוד :	נייד

תחום תדרים (מה"ר)	הספק (האט)	רוחב פס (קה"ר)	סוג אמנון
2,400.0000	2,483.5000	0.000977	GFSK, BDPSK
2,400.0000	2,483.5000	0.015488	OFDM/DSSS

2. **אישור זה בתוקף עד ליום 10/04/2021 אלא אם יבוטל/יחודש ע"י משרד התקשורת.**
3. אישור זה ניתן מכוח סעיף 4א לתקנות האלחוטי (נשפח חדש), תשל"ב-1972 (להלן – התקנות), ובהתאם עליו הוראות שיהן ב לצרף ל'תקנות', והתקנות שנקבעו מכוחה.
4. סעיף 4(ה) לתקנות קובע כי בעל אישור התאמה העומק ביניהם או מיבואו של מכשיר במשלוח אישור, יישמרו מסמכים שהוציא במסגרת בקשת האישור לתקנה של שלוש שנים מיום מתן אישור התאמה, ומקף-על-כן, יישמר העתק בישנות, לתקנה האמורה, גם מסמכים המעידים את זהות יצרן המכשיר האלחוטי והמספק שממנו הגיעו המכשיר או שממנו יובא או ייוצא, לתקנה של 3 שנים מסוגר תריכיה.
5. חל איסור לבצע בדגם המכשיר שלבצע ניתן האישור אשר יש בו כדי לעמת את התנותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה החלפת אנטנה מקורית או תוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, אלא אם כן קיבל אישור מראש לכך מאת הגורם המוסמך במשרד התקשורת.
6. המכשיר האלחוטי יתפעל על פי התדרים, התנאים והמגבלות המצוינים באישור זה, ובתקנות או בנהלים לפי התקנה.
7. אין במתן אישור זה כדי לגרוע את מקבל האישור או לקוחותיו מן החובה לקבל, לעניין הפעלת המכשיר, כל רישיון, היתר, אישור או הסכמה לפי כל דין אחר.
8. אין באישור זה להעמלת המכשיר פוגם ויתר לגרום להפרעות ומיתוי אלחוטיות המפעלות כדין, בפקודת של הפרעה אלחוטיות כאמור, יש להפסיק את פעילתו מיידית.
9. המכשיר האלחוטי אינו מוגן מפני הפרעות אלחוטיות מצד מכשירים אחרים.
10. אישור זה לא מקנה לשטחי יחודה ושחמון. אין להעביר ציוד אלחוטי לגורמים בתחומי הרשות הפלסטינית, ללא אישור מתאים בכתב מקב"ט משרדית בשיטות האגירה.
11. לפי סעיף 4ד לתקנות אישור התאמה אינו ניתן להעברה אלא אם כן ניתן לכך מראש והכתב מאת משרד התקשורת והתחום לתנאים שנקבעו באישור.
12. בנוקרה של שינוי בתכונות המכשיר מצד היצרן יש ליידע מיידית את משרד התקשורת, ולבקש את אישורו לכך.
13. הגשת פרוץ כוזב, שגוי, מטעה או חלקי, או הפרה של תנאי האישור התקנות או ההוראות לפי התקנה, עשויה להיצביל להיטלת עיצום כספי בסכום מרבי של 140,000 ש"ח, וכן לביטול האישור.
14. תנאים מיוחדים והערות הנוגעים:

14.1 היבואן יידביק תווית על גוף המכשיר ותווית נוספת על גבי אריזה חיצונית, בהן יהיה רשום:
א. מספר אישור התאמה אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-68505.
ב. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לצורות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

14.2 נדרש להדגיש ללקוח המסוף כי השימוש בציוד זה הינו על פי התנאים הבאים:
א. נקודות הגישה תהיה מוגדרת אך ורק לחיבור משתמש המצוי בחצרים
מתוחמים (גדוגמת בית, בית עסק, מתחם שדה תעופה, קמפוס אוניברסיטאי וכו'

אישור התאמה 51-68505

* Not available on all models

Continued

Moroccan models

FOB Keyless Access System	Hands-Free Telephone System (Models with Display Audio)
AGRÉÉ PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 19082 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 26 MARS 2019	AGRÉÉ PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 19569 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 25/04/2019

Numbers

12-Volt Battery 573
Charging System Indicator 110
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt Battery) 573
Maintenance (Replacing) 576

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 503
Accessories and Modifications 589
Accessory Power Sockets 231
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 406
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 447
Indicator (Amber) 120
Indicator (White/Green) 120
Adding
Coolant 551
Engine Oil 550
Washer 556
Additives, Engine Oil 546
Adjustable Speed Limiter 407
Indicator 119
Adjusting
Armrest 221
Front Seats 212
Head Restraints 218
Headlights 198
Mirrors 208
Steering Wheel 207
Adjusting the Sound 248, 307
Agile Handling Assist 422
Aha™ 325
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 233
Changing the Mode 234
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 234
Dust and Pollen Filter 581
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 234
Sensor 235
Using Automatic Climate Control 233
Air Pressure 636
Airbags 56
After a Collision 58
Airbag Care 75
Centre Airbag 66
Driver's Knee Airbag 64
Event Data Recorder 1
Front Airbags (SRS) 58
Indicator 73, 113
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 113
Sensors 56
Side Airbags 68
Side Curtain Airbags 71
AM/FM Radio 250, 314
Android Auto 341
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 503
Indicator 113
Apple CarPlay 337
Armrest 221
Arrange Contents 153
Audio 148
Audio Remote Controls 243, 289
Audio System 238
Adjusting the Sound 248, 307
Aha™ 325
AM/FM Radio 250, 314
Android Auto 341
App Shortcut Function 297
Apple CarPlay 337
Audio Remote Controls 243, 289
Audio System Function 241, 286
Audio/Information Screen 244, 296
Basic Operation 241, 286
Bluetooth® Audio 263, 330
Clock Setup 304
DAB 254, 319
Display Setup 249, 308
Error Messages 377
FLAC/PCM/WAVE/MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV 326
General Information 379
Honda Personal Assistant 292
How to Update 309
How to Update Wirelessly 312
How to Update with a USB Device 313
iPod 257, 322
Limitations for Manual Operation 303
MP3/WMA/AAC 260, 326
On Board Apps 333
On-Board Owner's Manual 291

Radio Data System (RDS)..... 251, 317
Reactivating..... 240
Security Code..... 240
Selecting an Audio Source..... 302
Start Up..... 285
Status Area..... 302
Switching the Display..... 244
System Updates..... 309
System Updates Settings..... 310
Theft Protection..... 240
USB Flash Drives..... 260, 326, 380
USB Port(s)..... 242, 288
Voice Control Operation..... 293
Wallpaper Setup..... 246, 305
Wi-Fi Connection..... 335
Audio System Theft Protection..... 240
Audio/Information Screen..... 244, 296
Auto High-Beam..... 199
Indicator..... 116
Automatic Brake Hold..... 500
Indicator..... 108, 500
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function..... 210
Automatic Intermittent Wipers..... 203
Average Fuel Economy..... 145
Average Speed..... 147

B

Battery..... 14
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator..... 110
Charging System Indicator..... 616
High Voltage..... 14, 431
Jump Starting..... 610
Belts (Seat)..... 42
Beverage Holders..... 226
Blind spot information System..... 427
***Bluetooth*® Audio**..... 263, 330
Booster Seats (For Children)..... 99
Brake System..... 496
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)..... 503
Automatic Brake Hold..... 500
Brake Assist System..... 504
Fluid..... 555
Foot Brake..... 499
Indicator..... 107, 109, 618, 620
Parking Brake..... 496
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)..... 206
Bulb Replacement..... 558
Back-Up Lights..... 560
Brake Lights..... 559
Daytime Running Lights..... 558
Front Fog Lights..... 558
Front Turn Signal Lights..... 558
Headlights..... 558
High-Mount Brake Light..... 561
Luggage Area Lights..... 562
Position Lights..... 558
Rear Fog Light..... 561
Rear Licence Plate Light..... 561
Rear Turn Signal Lights..... 559
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights..... 558
Taillights..... 559
Bulb Specifications..... 635

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas..... 101
Carrying Luggage..... 393, 395
Certification Label..... 637
Change Units..... 152
Changing Bulbs..... 558
Charging System Indicator..... 616
Child Restraint System..... 76
Booster Seats..... 99
Child Restraint System for Infants..... 79
Child Restraint System for Small Children..... 81
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt..... 94
Larger Children..... 98
Rear-facing Child Restraint System..... 79
Selecting a Child Restraint System..... 82
Using a Tether..... 96
Child Safety..... 76
Childproof Door Locks..... 178
Childproof Door Locks..... 178
Cleaning the Exterior..... 586

Cleaning the Interior 584
Climate Control System 233
Changing the Mode 233
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 234
Dust and Pollen Filter 581
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 234
Sensors 235
Using Automatic Climate Control 233
Clock 139, 166
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 435
Coat Hook 227
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 435
Colour Audio 241
Console Box 225
Controls 165
Coolant (Engine)
Overheating 614
Cooling System 551
Adding to the Reserve Tank 551
Creeping 402
Cross Traffic Monitor 513
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow and the LKAS 139
Customize Display 153
Customized Features 154, 265, 345, 352

D

DAB 254, 319
Daytime Running Lights 197
Dead Battery 610
Defaulting All the Settings 358
Deflation Warning System 423
Indicator 115, 621
Initialisation 423
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 234
Demister 205
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 638
Dimming
Headlights 191
Rearview Mirror 208
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 549
Display Audio System 285
Display Setup 249, 308
Door Mirrors 209
Doors 167
Door and Tailgate Open Indicator 41
Door Open Message 124
Keys 167
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 176
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 170
Lockout Prevention System 175
Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points 162
Driver Information Interface 140
Switching the Display 140
Driver's Knee Airbag 64
Driving 391
Braking 496
Shifting Gear 403
Transmission 402
Dust and Pollen Filter 581

E

e:HEV 13
eCall Indicator 386
ECON Mode 405
Indicator 118
Elapsed Time 147
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator 114, 619
Emergency Call (eCall) 386
Automatic Emergency Call 386
Manual Emergency Call 388
Emergency Stop Signal 505
Emergency Towing 629
Engine
Jump Starting 610
Number 637
Oil 546
Switch Buzzer 189, 190
Engine Coolant
Overheating 614
Engine Oil 546
Adding 550
Checking 549

Low Oil Pressure Warning 125, 616
Recommended Engine Oil 546
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 619
Indicator 114
EV Indicator 110
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 101
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 586
Exterior Mirrors 209

F

Features 237
Filter
Dust and Pollen 581
Flat Tyre 593
Fluids
Brake 555
Cooling System 551
Windscreen Washer 556
FM/AM Radio 250, 314
Folding Down the Rear Seats 214
Foot Brake 499
Front Airbags (SRS) 58
Front Fog Light Indicator 117
Front Seat Heaters 232
Front Seats 211
Adjusting 212
Front Wide View Camera 494
Fuel 29, 520
Economy and CO_2 Emissions 523
Gauge 137
Instant Fuel Economy 145
Low Fuel Indicator 112
Range 145
Recommendation 520
Refueling 520
Fuel Economy 145
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 523
Fuel Fill Cap 29, 521
Fuel Fill Door 29, 521
Fuses 623
Inspecting and Changing 628
Locations 623, 624, 625

G

Gauges 137
Glass (care) 585, 587
Glove Box 224

H

Hands-Free Telephone System 269, 359
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History 279
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls 369
Automatic Transferring 278, 370
Caller ID Information 278
Favorite Contacts 371
HFT Buttons 269, 359
HFT Menus 271, 363
HFT Status Display 270, 361
Limitations for Manual Operation 270, 362
Making a Call 281, 373
Options During a Call 284, 376
Phone Settings Screen 365
Phone Setup 275, 366
Receiving a Call 283, 375
Ring Tone 278, 370
Speed Dial 280
To Clear the System 279
Hazard Warning Button 6, 7
Head Restraints 218
Headlights 191
Adjuster 198
Aiming 558
Auto High-Beam 199
Dimming 191
Operating 191
Heated Door Mirror Button 205
Heated Steering Wheel 231
Heaters (Front Seat) 232
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) 269, 359
High Beam Indicator 117
High Voltage Battery 431
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge 138
Hill Start Assist System 399
Honda Personal Assistant 292
Honda Sensing 30, 432

Hybrid Vehicle
e:HEV 13

I

Identification Numbers 637
Engine, Motor and Transmission 637
Vehicle Identification 637
Illumination Control 206
Immobilizer System 181
Indicator 118
Indicators 106
12-Volt Battery Charging System 110
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 120, 447
Adjustable Speed Limiter 119
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 113
Auto High-Beam 116
Automatic Brake Hold 108, 500
Automatic Brake Hold System 108
Door and Tailgate Open 41
ECON Mode 118
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 114
EV 110
Front Fog Light 117
High Beam 117
Immobilizer System 118
Intelligent Speed Limiter 119
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 120, 121
Lights On 117
Low Fuel 112
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System 115
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 110
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 109, 620
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 107, 620
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off 113
Power System 109, 622
Ready 110
Rear Fog Light 117
Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist 121
Safety Support (Amber) 121
Safety Support (Green/Gray) 123
Seat Belt Reminder 112
Security System Alarm 118
Shift Position 111
Supplemental Restraint System 113
System Message 116
Transmission System 111
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 116
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF 114, 421
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 114
Information 153
Instant Fuel Economy 145
Instrument Panel 105
Brightness Control 206
Intelligent Speed Limiter 413
Indicator 119
Interior Convenience Items 222
Interior Lights 222
Interior Rearview Mirror 208
iPad 379
iPhone 379
iPod 257, 322, 379

J

Jacking Points 606
Jump Starting 610

K

Key Number Tag 168
Keyless Lockout Prevention 175
Keys 167
Lockout Prevention 175
Number Tag 168
Rear Door Won't Open 178
Remote Transmitter 173
Types and Functions 167
Kickdown 402

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 467
Indicator (Amber) 120
Indicator (Green) 121
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto 384

Lights 191, 558
Bulb Replacement 558
Daytime Running Lights 197
Fog Light 195
Front Fog Lights 195
High Beam Indicator 117
Interior 222
Light Switches 191
Lights On Indicator 117
Luggage Area Lights 223
Load Limits 395
Locking/Unlocking 167
Childproof Door Locks 178
From Inside 176
From Outside 170
Keys 167
Using a Key 174
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 170
Lockout Prevention System 175
Low Battery Charge 616
Low Fuel Indicator 112
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 169
Low Oil Level Symbol 622
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 616
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator 115, 621
Lower Anchorages 90
Lubricant Specifications Chart 635
Luggage (Load Limit) 395
Luggage Area Cover 230
Luggage Hook 228

M

Maintenance 150, 525
12-Volt Battery 573
Brake Fluid 555
Cleaning 584
Climate Control 580
Cooling System 551
Oil 549
Precautions 526
Radiator 553
Remote Transmitter 579
Replacing Light Bulbs 558
Safety 527
Service Reminder System 530
Transmission Fluid 554
Tyres 568
Under the Bonnet 543
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 110, 617
Map Lights 223
Maximum Permissible Weight 395
Meters, Gauges 137
Mirrors 208
Adjusting 208
Door 209
Interior Rearview 208
Modifications (and Accessories) 589
MP3/WMA/AAC 260, 326
Multi-View Rear Camera 518

N

Navigation 148
Numbers (Identification) 637

O

Odometer 138
Oil (Engine) 546
Adding 550
Checking 549
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 616
Recommended Engine Oil 546
Viscosity 546
On Board Apps 333
On-Board Owner's Manual 291
Open the Owner's Manual 291
Open Source Licences 383
Opening/Closing
Bonnet 544
Power Windows 184
Tailgate 179
Other Interior Convenience Items 231
Outside Temperature Display 138
Overheating 614

P

Parking Brake 496
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 618

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) 109, 620
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) 107, 620
Parking Sensor System 508
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 113
Passenger Front Airbag Off System 61
  Indicator 113
Passing Indicators 191
Petrol 29, 520
  Economy and CO_2 Emissions 523
  Gauge 137
  Information 520
  Instant Fuel Economy 145
  Low Fuel Indicator 112
  Refueling 520
Phone 148
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 263, 330
POWER Button 188
Power Flow 143
Power System
  Won't Start 607
Power System Indicator 109, 622
Power Windows 184
Precautions While Driving 400
  Rain 401
Pregnant Women 53
Puncture (Tyre) 593

R

Radiator 553
Radio (AM/FM) 250, 314
Radio Data System (RDS) 251, 317
Range 145
Range / Fuel / Trip Meter 144
RDS (Radio Data System) 251, 317
Ready Indicator 110
Rear Demister 205
Rear Fog Light Indicator 117
Rear Seats 214
Rearview Mirror 208
Refueling 520
  Fuel Gauge 137
  Low Fuel Indicator 112
  Petrol 520, 634
Regulations 638
Remote Transmitter 173
Replacement
  12-Volt Battery 576
  Bulbs 558
  Fuses 623, 625
  Rear Wiper Blade Rubber 566
  Wiper Blade Rubber 563
Resetting a Trip Meter 145
Road Departure Mitigation 478
  On and Off 482
  Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist Indicator 121

S

Safe Driving 37
Safety Labels 102
Safety Message 0
Safety Support 151
  Indicator (Amber) 121, 122, 123
  Indicator (Green/Gray) 123
Seat Belts 42, 150
  Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 50
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 47
  Checking 54
  Fastening 48
  Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 94
  Pregnant Women 53
  Reminder 45
  Warning Indicator 45, 112
Seat Heaters 232
Seats 211
  Adjusting 211
  Front Seat Heaters 232
  Front Seats 211
  Rear Seats 214
  Seat Heaters 232
Security System 181
  Immobilizer System Indicator 118
  Security System Alarm Indicator 118
  Super Locking 183
Select Lever 27
Selecting a Child Restraint System 82
Selector Knob (Audio) 241

Service Reminder System 530
Setting the Clock 166
Settings 154
Shift Lever 27
  Operation 27
  Releasing 613
  Won't Move 613
Shift Position Indicator 111
Shifting (Transmission) 403
Shoulder Anchor 50
Side Airbags 68
Side Curtain Airbags 71
Simple 142
SOS Button 388
SOS Cancel Button 388
Spark Plugs 634
Specifications 634
Specified Fuel 520, 634
Speed & Time 146
Speed Alarm 149
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 407
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 413
Speedometer 137
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 58
Starting the Engine
  Jump Starting 610
Steering Wheel 207
  Adjusting 207
Stopping 506
Storage Items 224
Super Locking 183
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 58
Switches
  (Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 7, 8
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) ... 188
Switching the Display 140
System Indicator 116
System Updates 309

T

Tailgate 179
Temperature
  Outside Temperature Display 138
Temperature Sensor 138
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre 593
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 593
Tie-down Anchors 228
Time (Setting) 166
Tools 592
Towing a Trailer 396
Towing Your Vehicle
  Emergency 629
Traffic Sign Recognition System 139, 487
Transmission 402, 403
  Creeping 402
  Fluid 554
  Indicator 111
  Kickdown 402
  Number 637
  Operating the Shift Button 403
  Operation 27
  Shift Lever Does Not Move 613
  Shift Position Indicator 111
Trip Meter 145, 147
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 593
Troubleshooting 591
  Blown Fuse 623, 625
  Brake Pedal Vibrates 33
  Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 34
  Emergency Towing 629
  Noise When Braking 35
  Overheating 614
  Power System Won't Start 607
  Rear Door Won't Open 34, 178
  Shift Lever Won't Move 613
  Warning Indicators 106
Turn Signals
  Indicators (Instrument Panel) 116
Turning on the Power 397
  Does Not Activate 607
Tyres 568
  Air Pressure 636
  Checking and Maintaining 568
  Inspection 568
  Rotation 571
  Tyre Chains 572
  Wear Indicators 569
  Winter 572

U

Unlocking the Doors 170
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 21
USB Flash Drives 260, 326, 380
USB Port(s) 242, 288

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Numbers 637
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 420
  OFF Button 421
  OFF Indicator 114
  System Indicator 114
Viscosity (Oil) 546, 635
Voice Control Operation 293
  Audio Commands 294
  General Commands 294
  Honda Personal Assistant Commands 295
  List Commands 295
  Navigation Commands 295
  Phone Commands 294
  Standard Commands 295
  Voice Portal Screen 294
  Voice Recognition 293
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 420

W

Wallpaper 246, 305
Warning and Information Message 124
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 616
Warning Labels 102
Watts 635
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 569
When You Cannot Open the Tailgate 632
Wi-Fi Connection 335
Window Washers 202
  Adding/Refilling Fluid 556
  Switch 202
Windows (Opening and Closing) 184
Windscreen 202
  Cleaning 585, 587
  Defrosting/Defogging 205, 234
  Washer Fluid 556
  Wiper Blades 563
  Wipers and Washers 202
Winter Tyres 572
  Tyre Chains 572
Wipers and Washers 202
  Automatic Intermittent Wipers 203
  Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 563
  Front 202
  Rear 204
WMA 260, 326
Worn Tyres 568